Contents
A-Z

OWNER'S MANUAL.

MINI.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

MINI

Owner's Manual for the vehicle

Thank you for choosing a MINI.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new MINI. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your MINI. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your MINI.

Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

Get started now. We wish you driving fun and inspiration with your MINI.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

© 2016 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written
consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English VI/16, 07 16 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

CONTENTS

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 248.

6 Information

AT A GLANCE
14 Cockpit
18 Onboard monitor
26 Voice activation system
29 Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

CONTROLS
34 Opening and closing
50 Settings
59 Transporting children safely
64 Driving
79 Displays
98 Lights
103 Safety
120 Driving stability control systems
124 Driving comfort
142 Climate control
149 Interior equipment
151 Digital compass
158 Storage compartments

DRIVING TIPS
164 Things to remember when driving
168 Loading
172 Saving fuel

MOBILITY
182 Refueling
184 Fuel
186 Wheels and tires
205 Engine compartment
207 Engine oil
211 Coolant
213 Maintenance
215 Replacing components
225 Breakdown assistance
231 Care

REFERENCE
238 Technical data
243 Appendix
248 Everything from A to Z

INFORMATION

USING THIS OWNER'S MANUAL

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the following Owner's Manuals:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Manual.
- ▷ MINI Motorer’s Guide App.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as printed book from the service center.

The topics of Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can also be called up via the following Owner's Manuals:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual on the Control Display in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Manual.
- ▷ MINI Motorer’s Guide App.

ADDITIONAL SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Dealer’s service center

A dealer’s service center will be glad to answer additional questions at any time.

Internet

The Owner's Manual and general Information about MINI, for example on technology, are available on the Internet: www.miniusa.com.

MINI Motorer’s Guide app

The Owner's Manual is available in many countries as an app for iOS or Android in the respective Store.

SYMBOLS AND DISPLAYS

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

⚠ Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

◄ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system..

››...‹‹ Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as list with bullet points.

- ▷ First possibility.
- ▷ Second possibility.

Symbols on vehicle components

📖 Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates features and functions that are not available in your vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

On right-hand drive vehicles, some control elements are arranged differently from what is shown in the illustrations.

STATUS OF THE OWNER'S MANUAL

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the following Owner's Manuals:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Manual.
- ▷ MINI Motorer’s Guide App.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

OWN SAFETY

Manufacturer

The manufacturer of this MINI is Bayerische Motoren Werke Aktionengesellschaft, BMW AG.

Intended use

Observe the following when using the vehicle:

- ▷ Owner's Manual.
- ▷ Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- ▷ Technical vehicle data.
- ▷ The laws and safety standards applicable in the country, where the vehicle is driven.
- ▷ Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and permit requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a dealer's service center.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g., the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a MINI dealer's service center. If you choose to use another service facility, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends use of a facility that performs work, e.g. maintenance and repair, according to MINI specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in this Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, e.g. maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

Parts and accessories

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by the manufacturer of the MINI.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a MINI dealer's service center.

MINI parts and accessories were tested by the manufacturer of the MINI for their safety and suitability in MINI vehicles.

The manufacturer of your vehicle warrants genuine MINI parts and accessories.

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with MINI vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for MINI vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance measures:

- ▷ MINI Maintenance system
- ▷ Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models
- ▷ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the MINI New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

DATA MEMORY

Many electronic components on your vehicle are equipped with data memories that temporarily or permanently store technical information about the condition of the vehicle, events and faults. This technical information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system or the environment:

- ▷ Operating mode of system components, e.g., fill levels.
- ▷ Status messages for the vehicle and from its individual components, for example wheel rotational speed, wheel speed, deceleration, transverse acceleration.
- ▷ Malfunctions and faults in important system components, e.g., lights and brakes.
- ▷ Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engaging the stability control system.
- ▷ Ambient conditions, such as temperature.

This data is purely technical in nature and is used to detect and correct faults and to optimize vehicle functions. Motion profiles over routes traveled cannot be created from this data. When service offerings are used, for example repair services, service processes, warranty claims, quality assurance, this technical information can be read out from the event and fault memories by employees of a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, including the manufacturer, using special diagnostic tools. You can obtain further information there if you need it. After an error is corrected, the information in the fault memory is deleted or overwritten on a continuous basis.

With the vehicle in use there are situations where you can associate this technical data with individuals if combined with other information, e.g., an accident report, damage to the vehicle, eye witness accounts — possibly with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions that are contractually agreed with the customer - such as vehicle emergency locating - allow certain vehicle data to be transmitted from the vehicle.

EVENT DATA RECORDER EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

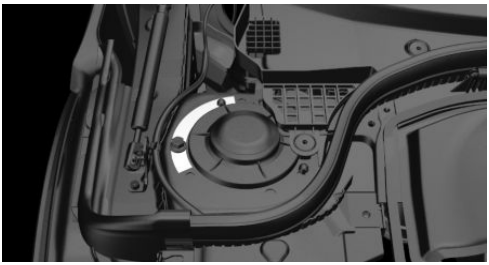
These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, e. g., name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



The vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment.

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying MINI of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or MINI of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

WATCH ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

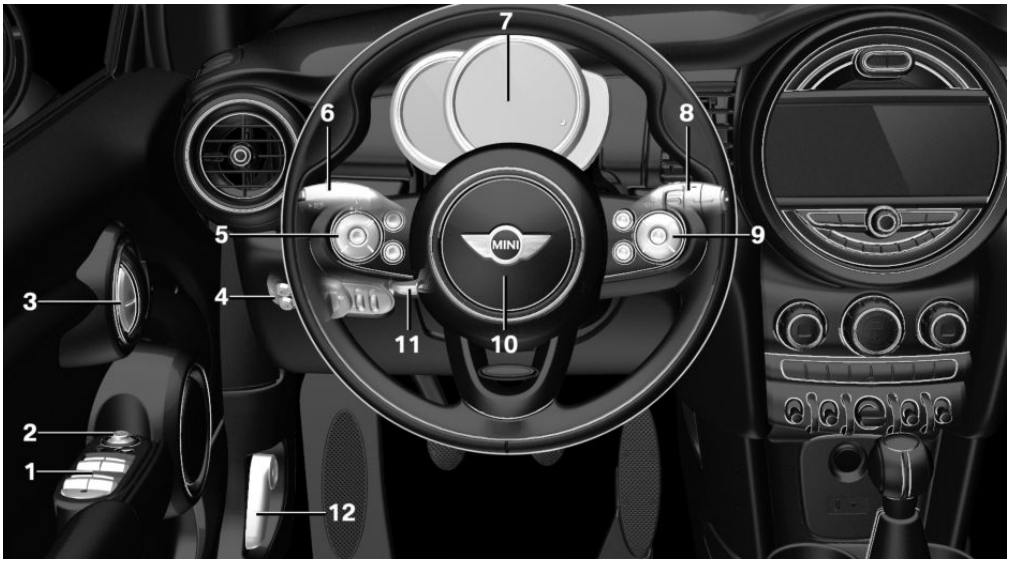
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

COCKPIT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

FUNCTIONS AND CONTROLS IN THE COCKPIT



1 Power windows 45

2 Exterior mirror operation 56

3 Buttons of the central locking system 38

4 Lights

Front fog lights 101

Rear fog lights 101

Light switch 98

Lights off

Daytime running lights 100

Parking lights 98

Low beams 98

Automatic headlamp control 99

Corner-illuminating lights 100

High-beam Assistant 100

Instrument lighting 101

5 Steering wheel buttons, left

Camera-based cruise control on/off 124

Cruise control on/off 129

SET Cruise control: store speed

RES CNCL Pausing, continuing cruise control

Cruise control: increase speed

Cruise control: reduce speed

Camera-based cruise control: reduce distance

Camera-based cruise control: increase distance

6 Steering column stalk, left

R L Turn signal 69

High beams, headlight flasher 69

High-beam Assistant 100

Roadside parking lights 99

BC Onboard computer 88

7 Instrument cluster 79

8 Steering column stalk, right

Windshield wipers 70

Rain sensor 71

Cleaning windows 71

REAR Rear window wiper 72

Clean the rear window 72

9 Steering wheel buttons, right

Voice activation 26

Telephone

OK Confirm the selection 88

Move selection up 88

Move selection down 88

Increase volume

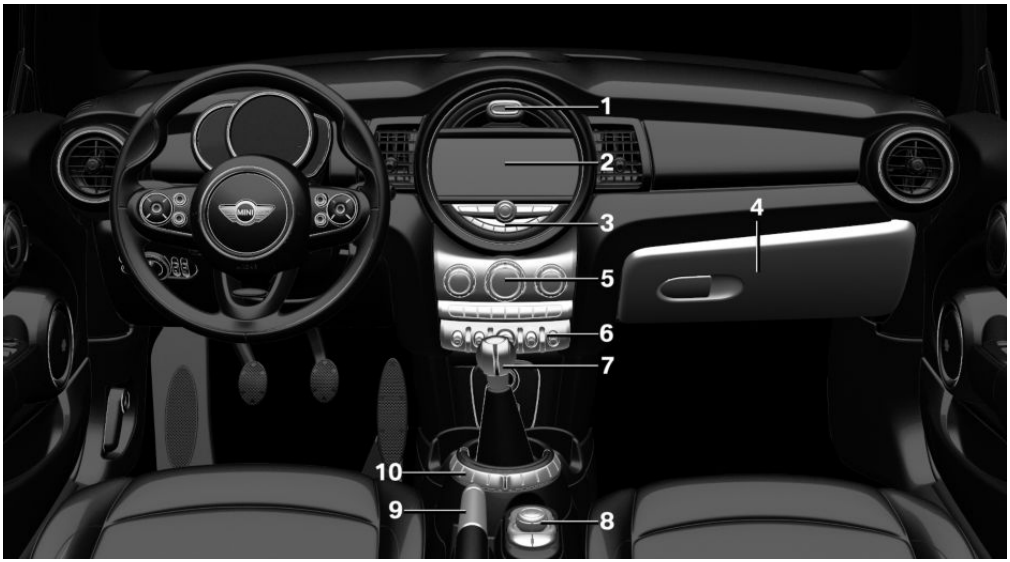
Reduce volume

10 Horn, entire surface

11 Adjust the steering wheel 58

12 Unlock hood 205

FUNCTIONS AND CONTROLS IN THE CENTER CONSOLE



1 Hazard warning system 225

Intelligent Safety 112

2 Control Display 18

3 Radio/Multimedia

4 Glove compartment 158

5 Climate control 142

6 PDC Park Distance Control 131

Rearview camera 134

Parking assistant 137

Auto Start/Stop function 66

Start/stop the engine and switch the ignition on/off 64

DSC Dynamic Stability Control 120

Head-up Display 93

7 Steptronic transmission selector lever 74

Manual transmission selector lever 74

8 Controller with buttons 19

9 Parking brake 68

10 MINI Driving Modes switch 122

IN THE VICINITY OF THE ROOFLINER

1

2

Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 106

3
Reading lights 102

4
Ambient light 102

5
Panoramic glass sunroof 48

6
Interior lights 102

ONBOARD MONITOR

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

CONCEPT

The onboard monitor combines the functions of a multitude of switches. Thus, these functions can be operated from a central location.

SAFETY INFORMATION

WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. If necessary, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.◀

OVERVIEW OF CONTROL ELEMENTS

Control elements

1 Control Display

2 Controller with buttons and, depending on the equipment version, with touchpad

Control Display

General information

To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions.

Do not place objects close to the Control Display; otherwise, the Control Display can be damaged.

In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, e.g., due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, e.g., through shadow or climate control system, the normal functions are restored.

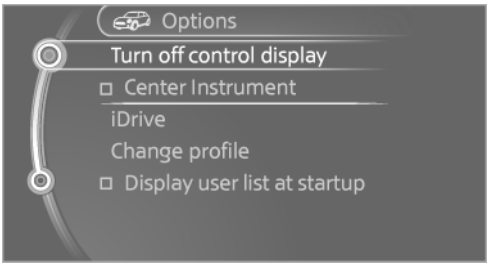
Switching on

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the controller.

Switching off

1.

Press button.
2. "Turn off control display"



Controller with navigation system

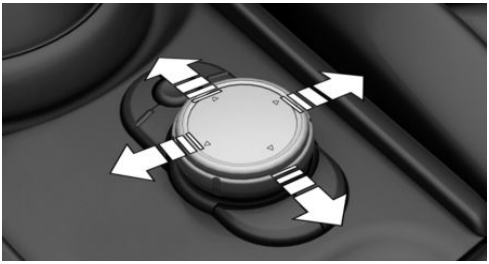
The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

Some functions of the onboard monitor can be operated using the touchpad on the controller:

1. Turn.

2. Press.

3. Move in four directions.



Buttons on controller

Press button	Function
MENU	Open the main menu.
RADIO	Opens the Radio menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Multimedia menu.
NAV	Opens the Navigation menu.
TEL	Opens the phone menu.
BACK	Displays the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Controller without navigation system

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

1. Turn.

2. Press.

3. Move in two directions.

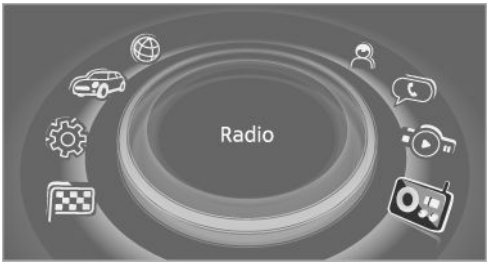
Buttons on controller

Press button	Function
MENU	Open the main menu.
AUDIO	Open audio menu last listened to, switch between audio menus.
TEL	Opens the phone menu.
BACK	Open previous panel.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

OPERATING CONCEPT

Opening the main menu

Press button.



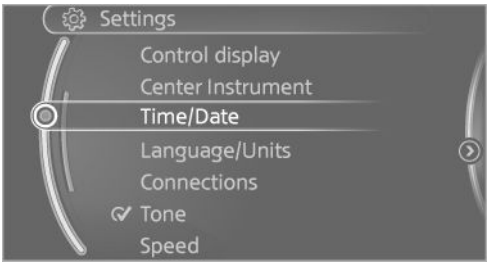
The main menu is displayed.

All onboard monitor functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting menu items

Highlighted menu items can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.



2. Press the controller.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g., "Settings".

Changing between panels

After a menu item is selected, e.g., "Radio", a new panel is displayed. Panels can overlap.

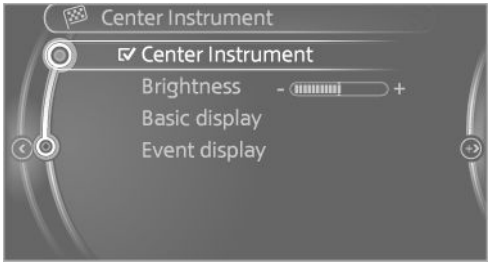
▷ Move the controller to the left.

Closes current display and shows previous display.

Reopens previous display by pressing BACK button. In this case, the current panel is not closed.

▷ Move the controller to the right.

Opens new display on top of previous screen.

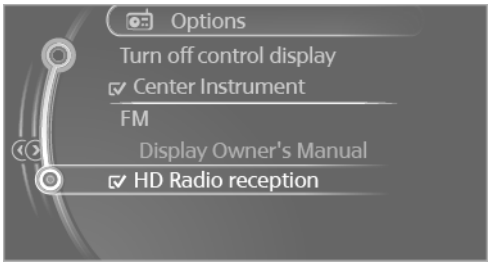


Arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional panels can be opened.

Opening the Options menu

Press button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.



Additional options: move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.

Options menu

The "Options" menu consists of various areas:

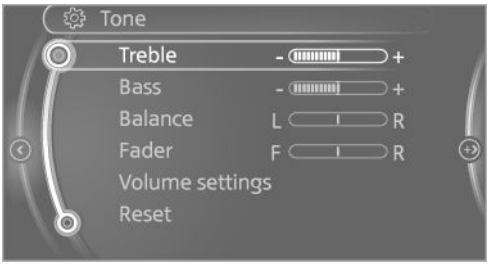
▷ Screen settings, e.g., "Split screen".

▷ Control options for the selected main menu, e.g., for "Radio".

▷ If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, e.g., "Store station".

Changing settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the controller.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a check-box. It indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

TOUCHPAD

Some functions of the onboard monitor can be operated using the touchpad on the controller:

Selecting functions

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Touchpad"
3. Select the desired function.
   ▷ "Speller": enter letters and numbers.
   ▷ "Interactive map": viewing the interactive map.
   ▷ "Audio feedback": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

Entering letters and numbers

Entering letters requires some practice at the beginning. When entering, pay attention to the following:

- ▷ The system distinguishes between upper and lower-case letters and numbers. For entries, it may be necessary to change between upper and lower-case letters, numbers and characters, refer to page 25.
- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized. Possible input depends on the set language. Where necessary, enter special characters via the controller.
- ▷ To delete a character, slide to the left on the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter a blank space, slide to the right in the center of the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter a hyphen, slide to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter an underscore, swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Operating the interactive map

The interactive map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Function	Controls
Interactive map.	Swipe into respective direction.
Enlarge/shrink interactive map.	Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Changing settings

You may change Control Display settings, for example the volume, via touchpad. Swipe left or right accordingly.

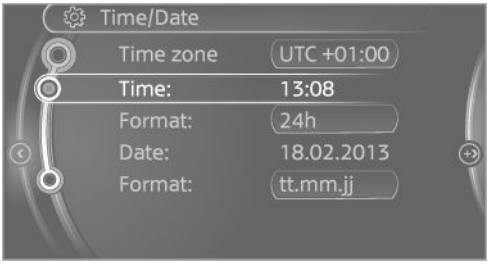
EXAMPLE: SETTING THE CLOCK

Setting the clock

On the Control Display:

1. MENU Press button. The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the Controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the Controller.

3. If necessary, move the Controller to the left to display "Time/Date".
4. Turn the Controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the Controller.
5. Turn the Controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the Controller.



6. Turn the Controller to set the hours and press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller to set the minutes and press the Controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

STATUS INFORMATION

Status field

The following information is displayed in the status field at the top right:

- ▷ Time.
- ▷ Current entertainment source.
- ▷ Sound output, on/off.
- ▷ Wireless network reception strength.
- ▷ Phone status.
- ▷ Traffic bulletin reception.

Status field symbols

The symbols are grouped as follows:

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
HD	HD Radio station is being received.
	Satellite radio is switched on.

Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Wireless network reception strength. Symbol flashes: network search.
	Wireless network is not available.
	Bluetooth is switched on.
	Roaming is active.
	Text message was received.
	Check the SIM card.
	SIM card is blocked.
	SIM card is missing.
	Enter PIN.

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Music collection.
gracenote	Gracenote® database.
	AUX-IN port.
	USB audio interface.

Additional symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Spoken instructions are turned off.

SPLIT SCREEN

General information

Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, for example, information from the onboard computer.

In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when you change to another menu.

Switching the split screen on/off

On the Control Display:

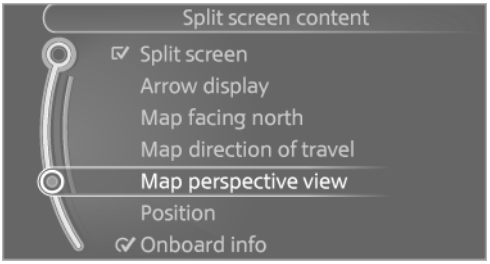
1. OPTION Press button.
2. "Split screen"

Selecting the display

On the Control Display:

1. OPTION Press button.
2. "Split screen"

3. Move the Controller until the split screen is selected.
4. Press the Controller or select "Split screen content".
5. Select the desired menu item.



PROGRAMMABLE MEMORY BUTTONS

General information

The onboard monitor functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, e.g., radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Saving a function

1. Highlight function via the onboard monitor.
2. 1...6 Press and hold the desired button, until a signal sounds.

Running a function

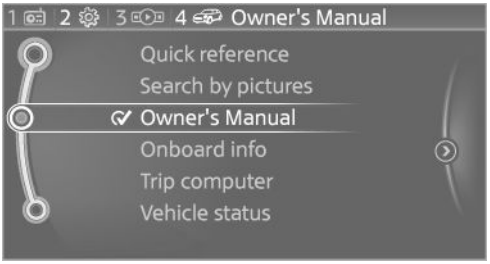
1...6 Press button.

The function will work immediately. This means, e.g., that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying the button assignment

Touch buttons with bare fingers. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The key assignment is displayed at top edge of screen.



Deleting the button assignments

1. Press buttons 1 and 6 simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

DELETING PERSONAL IN THE VEHICLE

The concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle saves personal data, such as stored radio stations. These personal data can be permanently deleted via the onboard monitor.

General information

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- ▷ Personal Profile settings.
- ▷ Stored radio stations.
- ▷ Stored Favorites buttons.
- ▷ Travel and on-board computer information.
- ▷ Music collection.
- ▷ Navigation, e.g. stored destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Voice notes

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 30 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data

Heed and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. "Settings"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete all personal data"
5. "Continue"
6. "OK"

ENTERING LETTERS AND NUMBERS

General information

On the Control Display:

1. Turn the controller: select letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers, if needed.
3. "OK": confirm the entry.

Symbol	Function
I←	Press the controller: delete letters or number.
I←	Press the controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers.

Switching between upper/lower case, numbers and characters

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering upper and lower case letters and numbers:

Symbol	Function
ABC	Enter the letters.
1@+	Enter the numbers.
abc or ABC	Tip the controller up.

Without navigation system

@A Aa a@ Select the symbol.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the choice is narrowed down with every letter entered and letters may be added automatically.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- ▷ Only those letters are offered during entry for which data is available.
- ▷ Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available on the Control Display.

VOICE ACTIVATION SYSTEM

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

THE CONCEPT

- ▷ Most functions displayed on the Control Display can be operated by voice commands via the voice activation system. The system supports you with announcements during input.
- ▷ Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary cannot be used via the voice activation system.
- ▷ The system uses a special microphone on the driver's side.
- ▷ ›...‹ Verbal instructions in the Owner's Manual to use with the voice activation system.

REQUIREMENTS

Via the Control Display, set a language that is also supported by the voice activation system so that the spoken commands can be identified.

Set the language, refer to page 92.

USING VOICE ACTIVATION

Activating the voice activation system

1. Press button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

   A command that is recognized by the voice activation system is announced and displayed in the instrument cluster.

This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice activation system is active.

If no other commands are available, operate the function via the onboard monitor.

Terminating the voice activation system

Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

POSSIBLE COMMANDS

Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands.

The available commands depend on the menu that is currently displayed on the Control Display.

There are short commands for many functions.

You may select lists such as phone lists via voice activation. Read these lists out loud exactly as they show in the respective list.

Having possible commands read aloud

You can have available commands read out loud for you: ›Voice commands‹

E.g. if the "Settings" menu is displayed, the commands for the settings are read out loud.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Executing functions using short commands

Execute functions on the main menu via short commands. It almost doesn't matter which menu item is selected, for example, ›Vehicle status‹.

The list for short commands of the voice activation system can be called up via the Integrated Owner's Manual on the Control Display.

Help dialog for the voice activation system

Calling up help dialog: ›Help‹

Additional commands for the help dialog:

- ▷ ›Help with examples‹: announces information about the current operating options and the most important commands for them.
- ▷ ›Help with voice activation‹: information about the principle of operation for the voice activation system is announced.

ONE EXAMPLE: OPENING THE TONE SETTINGS

Via the main menu

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the controller.

1. Turn on the Entertainment sound output if needed.
2. Press button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Radio‹
4. ›Tone‹

Via short command

The desired tone settings can also be started via a short command.

1. Turn on the Entertainment sound output if needed.
2. Press button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Tone‹

SETTING THE VOICE DIALOG

Set system to standard dialog or use a short version.

The short version of the voice dialog plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

On the Control Display:

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech type:"
4. Select setting.

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

- ▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- ▷ The volume is stored for the profile currently used.

INFORMATION ON EMERGENCY REQUESTS

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a phone connection.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.
- Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed to prevent noise interference.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

INTEGRATED OWNER'S MANUAL IN THE VEHICLE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

INTEGRATED OWNER'S MANUAL IN THE VEHICLE

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display. It specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

Components of the Integrated Owner's Manual

The Integrated Owner's Manual consists of three parts, which offer various levels of information or possible access.

Quick Reference Guide

The Quick Reference Guide provides information how to operate the car, how to use basic vehicle functions and what to do in case of a breakdown. This information can also be displayed while driving.

Search by images

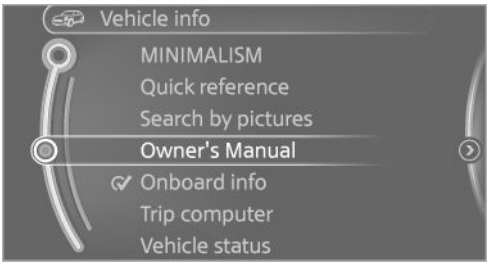
Image search provides information and descriptions. This is helpful when the terminology for a feature is not at hand.

Owner's Manual

Search for information and descriptions by entering terms selected from the index.

Select components

1. MENU Press button.
2. Turn the Controller: open "Vehicle info".
3. Press the Controller.
4. Selecting desired range:
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "Search by pictures"
   - ▷ "Owner's Manual"



Leafing through the Owner's Manual

Page by page with link access

Turn the Controller until the next or previous page is displayed.

Page by page without link access

Scroll through the pages directly while skipping the links.

Highlight the symbol once. Now simply press the Controller to browse from page to page.

Scroll back.

Scroll forward.

Context help - Owner's Manual to the temporarily selected function

You may open the relevant information directly.

Opening via onboard monitor

To move directly from the application on the Control Display to the Options menu:

1. OPTION Press button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Display Owner's Manual"

Changing between a function and the Owner's Manual

To switch from a function, e.g., radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display and to alternate between the two displays:

1. OPTION Press button or move the Controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"
3. Select the desired page in the Owner's Manual.
4. OPTION Press button again to return to last displayed function.
5. BACK Press button to return to the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last.

To alternate permanently between the last displayed function and the Owner's Manual repeat steps 4 & 5. Opens a new display every time.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The Owner's Manual can be stored on the Programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing

1. Select "Owner's Manual" via the onboard monitor.
2. 1...6 Press and hold the desired button, until a signal sounds.

Executing

1...6 Press button.

The Owner's Manual is displayed immediately.

HANDLE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

OPENING AND CLOSING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

REMOTE CONTROL

General information

The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with integrated key.

Each remote control contains a replaceable battery. Replace the battery, refer to page 36.

You may set the key functions depending on the optional features and country-specific version. Settings, refer to page 43.

The vehicle stores personal settings for every remote control. Personal Profile, refer to page 41.

The remote controls hold information about required maintenance. Service data in the remote control, refer to page 213.

Safety information

WARNING

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. The vehicle can then not be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the remote control with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.◂

WARNING

Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

If people must spend a longer time in the vehicle while it is very hot or cold outside, there is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.◂

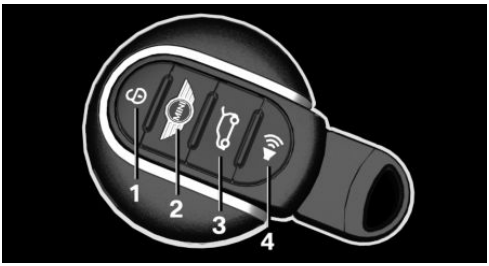
WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◂

Overview



1 Unlock
2 Lock
3 Unlocking the tailgate
4 Panic mode

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Unlock

Press button on the remote control.

Depending on the settings, refer to page 43, the following access points are unlocked.

- ▷ Driver's door and fuel filler flap.
- ▷ All doors, tailgate, and fuel filler flap.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- ▷ The settings saved in the driver profile, refer to page 41, are applied.
- ▷ The interior lights and courtesy lamps are activated.

  These functions are not available if the interior lamps were switched off manually.
- ▷ The welcome lights are switched on, if this function was activated.
- ▷ The alarm system, refer to page 44, is switched off.

The light functions may depend on ambient brightness.

Convenient opening

Press and hold this button on the remote control after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

Lock

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press button on the remote control.

All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are locked.

The alarm system, refer to page 44, is switched on.

If the vehicle horn honks twice when you lock the vehicle, this means that the engine or ignition is still switched on. In this case, the engine or ignition must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

Switching on interior lights and courtesy lamps

Press button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

These functions are not available if the interior lamps were switched off manually.

The light functions may depend on ambient brightness.

If the button is pressed within 10 seconds of when the vehicle was locked Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor of the anti-theft warning system, refer to page 45, are turned off. After locking, wait 10 seconds before pressing the button again.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the country version, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking with the remote control. Create the settings, refer to page 43.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◂

NOTE

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◂

NOTE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the rear window and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the rear window.◂

Opening

Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

The tailgate is opened slightly and can be swung upward.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

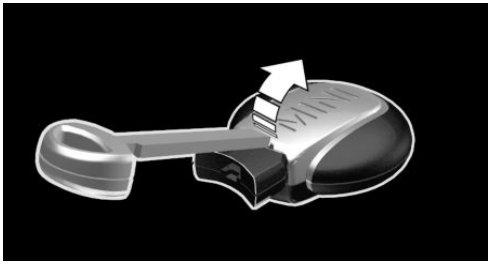
Press button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

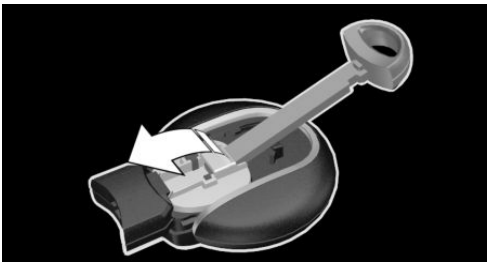
Replacing the battery

1. Remove the integrated key from the remote control, refer to page 37.
2. Slide the key into the opening and raise the cover.

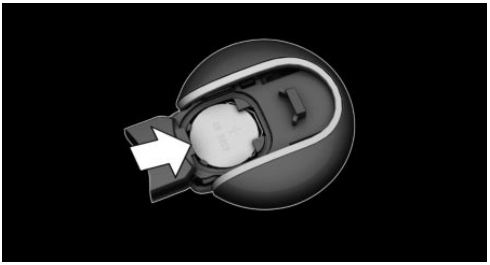
   The battery compartment is accessible.



3. Slide the key in the cover of the battery compartment and raise the cover.



4. Using a pointed object, press battery in direction of arrow and lift it out.



5. Insert a type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing up.
6. Insert lid and cover.
7. Push key into the remote control until it engages.

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

New remote controls

New remote controls are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Blocking remote controls

A lost remote control can be blocked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

Remote control detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replace the battery, refer to page 36.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the remote control.

  Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.
- ▷ Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of a mobile device, e.g., charging of a mobile phone.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key, refer to page 37.

Starting the engine via emergency detection of the remote control

1. Hold the remote control as shown against the marked area on the steering column.
2. Start the engine within 10 seconds.

If the remote control is not detected, slightly change the position of the remote control and repeat the procedure.

INTEGRATED KEY

General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without remote control using the integrated key.

Safety information

WARNING

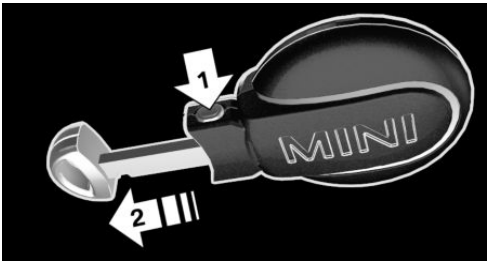
Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

If people must spend a longer time in the vehicle while it is very hot or cold outside, there is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.◀

NOTE

The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or key can be damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Remove the integrated key before pulling the outside door handle.◀

Removing



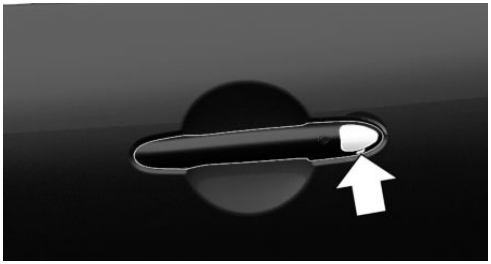
Press button, arrow 1, and remove key, arrow 2.

Locking/unlocking via the door lock

Unlock or lock the driver's door via the door lock using the integrated key. The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

1. Remove lid on the door lock.

   To do this, slide the integrated key into the opening from below and remove the lid.



2. Unlock or lock door lock.

Alarm system

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock. In order to stop this alarm, unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed, through emergency detection of the remote control, refer to page 37.

BUTTONS FOR THE CENTRAL LOCKING SYSTEM

General information

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Lock

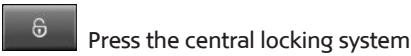
By pressing the button, the vehicle is locked with the doors closed.

- ▷ The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.
- ▷ The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlock

Pressing the button unlocks the vehicle.

Opening

- ▷  Press the central locking system button to unlock the doors together, and then pull the door handle above the armrest.
- ▷ Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- ▷ Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

COMFORT ACCESS

Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, such as in your pants pocket.

The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is in close proximity or in the vehicle's interior.

General information

To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

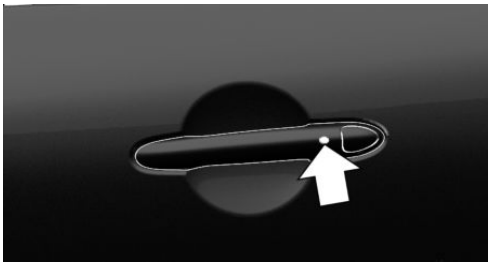
Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking/locking of the vehicle.
- ▷ Convenient closing.
- ▷ Open the tailgate.

Functional requirements

- ▷ To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- ▷ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

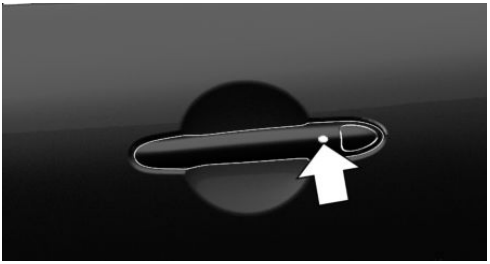
Unlocking



On the driver's or front passenger's door handle, press the button.

This corresponds to pressing the remote control button: 🔓

Lock



On the driver's or front passenger's door handle, press the button.

This corresponds to pressing the remote control button: MINI

To save battery power, ensure that all power consumers are turned off before locking the vehicle.

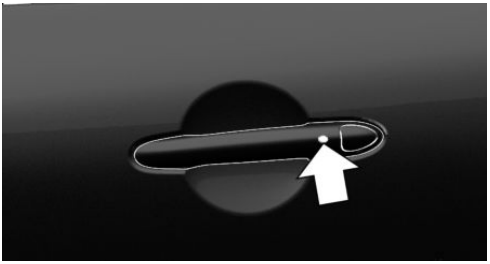
Convenient closing

Safety information

WARNING

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.◀

Closing



Press and hold down the handle of the driver or the front seat passenger.

This corresponds to pressing and holding the remote control button: MINI

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof will be closed.

Opening the tailgate

General information

If the tailgate is opened via Comfort Access, locked doors are not unlocked.

To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the rear window and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the rear window.◀

Opening

Press the button on tailgate's exterior.

The tailgate opens slightly and can be swung upward.

Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replace the battery, refer to page 36.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the remote control.

  Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the remote control or using the integrated key, refer to page 37.

TAILGATE

General information

To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the country version, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking with the remote control. Create the settings, refer to page 43.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◂

NOTE

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◂

NOTE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the rear window and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the rear window.◂

Opening from the outside

▷ Without Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle.

Press button next on tailgate.

▷ Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

As the case may be, the doors are also unlocked. Unlocking with the remote control, refer to page 35.

The tailgate is unlocked and can be swung upward.

Opening from the inside

With Steptronic transmission:

With the vehicle stationary, press the button in the driver's floor area.

If the vehicle is locked, selector lever position P must be engaged first.

With manual transmission:

With the vehicle stationary, press the button in the driver's floor area twice in quick succession.

Closing

Recessed grips on the inside trim of the tailgate can be used to conveniently pull down the tailgate.

PERSONAL PROFILE

The concept

Using Personal Profile, individual settings for several drivers can be saved and called up again at a later time.

General information

There are three profiles with which personal vehicle settings can be stored. Every remote control has one of these profiles assigned.

If the vehicle is unlocked using a remote control, the assigned personal profile will be activated. All settings stored in the profile are automatically applied.

If several drivers use their own remote control, the vehicle will adjust the personal settings during unlocking. These settings are also restored,

if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by a person with a different remote control.

Changes to the settings are automatically saved in the profile currently activated.

If another profile is selected via the onboard monitor, the settings saved in it will be applied automatically. The new profile is assigned to the remote control currently used.

There is an additional profile available that is not assigned to any remote control: It can be used to apply settings in the vehicle without changing the personal profiles.

Settings

The settings for the following systems and functions are saved in the active profile. The scope of storable settings depends on country and equipment.

- ▷ Unlocking and locking.
- ▷ Lights.
- ▷ Radio.
- ▷ Instrument cluster.
- ▷ Programmable memory buttons.
- ▷ Volumes, tone.
- ▷ Control Display.
- ▷ Climate control.
- ▷ Navigation.
- ▷ Park Distance Control PDC.
- ▷ Rearview camera.
- ▷ Head-up Display.
- ▷ MINI Driving Modes.
- ▷ Intelligent Safety.

Profile management

Opening profiles

Regardless of the remote control in use, a different profile may be activated.

On the Control Display:

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Select a profile.

The following functions are executed:

- ▷ All settings stored in the called-up profile are automatically applied.
- ▷ The called-up profile is assigned to the remote control being used at the time.
- ▷ If the profile is already assigned to a different remote control, this profile will apply to both remote controls.

Using the guest profile

The guest profile is for individual settings that are saved in none of the three personal profiles.

This can be useful for drivers who are using the vehicle temporarily and do not have their own profile.

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Guest"
4. Adjust the settings.

The guest profile cannot be renamed. It is not assigned to the current remote control.

Renaming profiles

A personal name can be assigned to every profile to avoid confusion between the profiles.

On the Control Display:

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Profiles"

   The current profile is selected.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Rename current profile"

Resetting profiles

The settings of the active profile are reset to their default values.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"

   The current profile is selected.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Reset current profile"

Exporting profiles

Most settings of the active profile can be exported.

This can be helpful for securing and retrieving personal settings, before delivering the vehicle to a workshop, e.g. Profiles can be taken to another vehicle equipped with the Personal Profile function.

Export is made via the USB port to a USB storage device.

Popular file systems for USB media are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats for profile export. Other formats may not support the export.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Export profile"
4. "USB device"

Importing profiles

Profiles stored on a USB device can be imported via the USB interface.

Existing settings are overwritten with the imported profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Import profile"
4. "USB device"

Display profile list during start

The profile list can be displayed during each start to select the desired profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display user list at startup"

SETTINGS

General information

Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the country version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

These settings are saved in the active driver profile, refer to page 41.

Unlock

Doors

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired function.
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"

     Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Tailgate

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired function.
   - ▷ "Tailgate"

     Only the tailgate is unlocked.
   - ▷ "Tailgate + door(s)"

The tailgate and the doors are unlocked.

Lock

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the desired setting.
   - ▷ "Lock if no door is opened"

     The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened after unlocking.
   - ▷ "Lock after start driving"

     The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the desired setting.
   - ▷ With alarm system:

     "Acoustic sig. lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is signaled by one honk of the horn.
   - ▷ "Flash when lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.

ALARM SYSTEM

General information

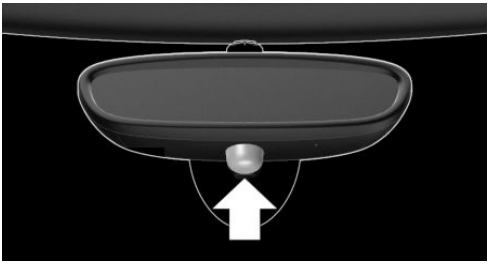
When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- ▷ Unauthorized opening of a door, the hood or the tailgate.
- ▷ Movements in the vehicle interior.
- ▷ Changes in the vehicle tilt, e. g., during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- ▷ Disconnected battery voltage.

The alarm system signals these changes both visually and acoustically:

- ▷ By acoustic alarm.
- ▷ By switching on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ By flashing the daytime running lights.

Overview



Indicator lamp on the interior mirror.

Switching on and off

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or with Comfort Access, the alarm system is switched on and off at the same time.

Door lock with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock.

Switching off the alarm, refer to page 45.

Tailgate with the alarm system switched on

The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again provided the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

Press button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Signals of the indicator lamp

- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- ▷ Indicator lamp flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  When the still open access points are closed, interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- ▷ The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the engine ignition is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor may trigger the alarm even though no one is trying to gain unauthorized access.

Possible situations for an unintended alarm:

- ▷ In automatic vehicle washes.
- ▷ In duplex garages.
- ▷ During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- ▷ With animals in the vehicle.

For such situations, the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can be switched off.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the remote control button again within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are turned off until the vehicle is locked again.

Switching off the alarm

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed through emergency detection of remote control, refer to page 37.
- ▷ With Comfort Access: If you have the remote control with you, unlock the vehicle using the button on the driver's side or passenger side door.

POWER WINDOWS

General information

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the windows are automatically closed except a gap.

Safety information

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.◀

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

Overview

On 5-door models

On 3-door models

Opening

- ▷ Press the button to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is held.

- ▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing again stops the motion.

See also: Convenient opening, refer to page 35, via remote control.

Closing

- ▷ Pull the switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is held.

- ▷ Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling again stops the motion.

Closing by means of Comfort Access, refer to page 39.

Pinch protection system

General information

If closing force exceeds a specific threshold as a window closes, closing is interrupted.

The window reopens slightly.

Safety information

WARNING

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.◀

Closing without the pinch protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain threshold.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without jam protection.

On 5-door models: safety switch

General information

The opening and closing of the rear window can be blocked via the safety switch for the rear. This makes sense, e.g., if children or animals are carried in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

Overview

Switching on and off

Press button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

Malfunction

General information

In certain situations a window can only be operated to a limited extent.

- ▷ After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the a window can only be operated to a limited extent. The system must be initialized in this case.
- ▷ The power window motors are equipped with overheating protection. If a window is opened and closed several times within a short period of time, the overheating protection switches the motor off temporarily. Depending on the degree of overheating, it may only be possible to close the window or it may not be possible to operate it at all.

  In this case: allow the power window motor to cool down.

Initializing the system

The system can be initialized when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.

During the initialization, the affected window closes without jam protection.

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.◂

1. Open the affected window completely.
2. Pull the switch to the resistance point and hold.

   The window closes.
3. Continue holding the switch pulled to the resistance point.

   Depending on the equipment, the window opens and closes one or twice after approx. 15 seconds.
4. Release switch.

PANORAMIC GLASS SUNROOF

General information

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the glass sunroof and possibly the electrical sliding visor close automatically.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.◂

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◂

Overview

Tilting the glass sunroof

Press back the switch up to or beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is raised.

Opening glass sunroof

When the glass sunroof is closed

Press the switch back beyond the resistance point and release it twice.

The glass sunroof is opened.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

With the glass sunroof completely raised

▷ Slide switch back to the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof is opened as long as the switch is pressed.

▷ Press the switch back beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is opened.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Comfort position

If the glass sunroof stops before it is completely opened, it is in the Comfort position. In this position the wind noises in the interior are the least.

If desired, continue the movement by Pressing the switch.

Closing glass sunroof

With the glass sunroof open

▷ Slide switch forward to the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof is closed as long as the switch is pressed and stops in the raised position.

▷ Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is closed and stops in the raised position.

Pressing the switch toward the back stops the motion.

▷ Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and release it twice.

The glass sunroof is closed.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

With the glass sunroof completely raised

Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is closed.

Pinch protection system

General information

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a glass sunroof closes, the closing action is interrupted.

The glass sunroof reopens slightly.

Closing without the pinch protection system

If there is an external danger, proceed as follows:

1. Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and hold it.

   The pinch protection is limited and the glass sunroof reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain threshold.

2. Press the switch forward again beyond the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Initializing after a power interruption

After a power failure, it can happen that the glass sunroof can only be raised. The system must be initialized in this case. MINI recommends having this work performed only by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

SETTINGS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

SITTING SAFELY

An ideal seating position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seating position plays an important role. For safe driving, please also observe the information in the following chapters:

- ▷ Safety belts, refer to page 52.
- ▷ Head restraints, refer to page 54.
- ▷ Airbags, refer to page 103.

SEATS

Safety information

WARNING

Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of an accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.◀

WARNING

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the protective effect of the safety belt cannot be ensured anymore. There is a risk of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.◀

WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

Adjusting seats

Overview

1 Forward/backward
2 Thigh support
3 Height
4 Backrest tilt

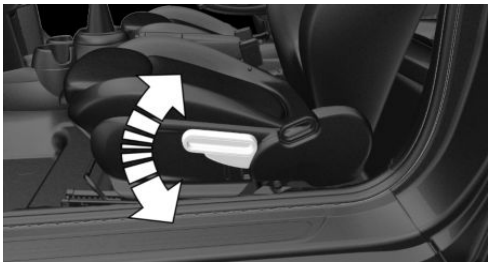
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Forward/backward

Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

After releasing the lever, move the seat forward or back slightly making sure it engages properly.

Height



Pull the lever up or press it down as often as needed to reach the desired height.

Backrest tilt

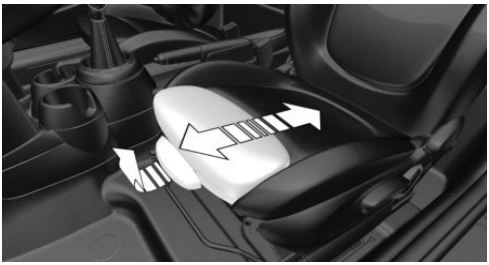
Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

Lumbar support

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

Turn the wheel in order to increase or decrease the curvature.

Thigh support



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support.

In 3-door models: entering the rear

Safety information

WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

WARNING

Unexpected movements of the backrest while driving may occur due to an unlocked backrest. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of injury. Fold back and lock the backrests before driving.◀

Fold down seat back

1. Pull lever up to the stop.

2. Fold backrest forward.
3. Push the seat forward.

Original position

The driver's seat features a mechanical memory function for forward/back and backrest adjustment.

1. Push the seat back into the original position.
2. Fold back the backrest to lock the seat.

If the backrest is folded back when the seat is not yet in the original position, the seat latches in the current position. In this case, manually adjust longitudinal direction, refer to page 51.

Front seat heating

Overview

Seat heating

Switching on

Press button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

When GREEN Mode, refer to page 173, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Switching off

Press and hold the button, until the LEDs go out.

SAFETY BELTS

Number of safety belts

The vehicle is fitted with four or five safety belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

The two outer safety belt buckles, integrated into the rear seat, are for passengers sitting on the left and right.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

The center safety belt buckle of the rear seat is solely intended for the person sitting in the middle.

General information

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by all occupants before driving off. Although airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.

Slowly guide the safety belt out of the holder when applying it.

If needed, disengage the safety belt in the rear from the belt buckle on the side.

The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.

Safety information

WARNING

If the safety belt is used by more than one person, the protective effect of the safety belt cannot be ensured anymore. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and respectively secured in designated child restraint systems.◀

WARNING

The protective effect of the safety belts can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.◀

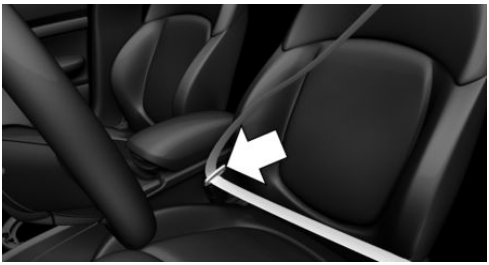
WARNING

With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective function of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear backrest.◀

Correct use of safety belts

- ▷ Wear the safety belt twist-free and as tight to your body as possible over your lap and shoulders.
- ▷ Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over your lap. The safety belt may not press on your stomach.
- ▷ Do not wear the safety belt on your throat, rub it on sharp edges, guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- ▷ Avoid thick clothing.
- ▷ Re-tighten the safety belt frequently upward around your upper body.

Buckling the seat belt



Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat

The indicator lamp lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder is active at speeds above

approx. 6 mph/10 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Damage to safety belts

WARNING

The protective effect of the safety belts may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- ▷ Safety belts are damaged, soiled or changed in any other way.
- ▷ Safety belt buckle is damaged or heavily soiled.
- ▷ Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

Correctly adjusted head restraint

General information

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at eye level.

Distance

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Adjust the head restraint via the backrest tilt as needed.

Safety information

WARNING

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury. Install head restraints on occupied seats prior to driving and make sure that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.◀

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.◀

WARNING

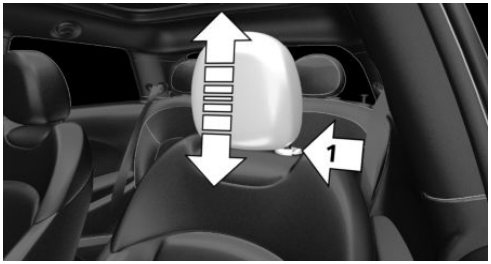
Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, e.g., clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, e.g., pillows, while driving.◀

Adjusting the height: John Cooper Works sport seat

The height of the head restraints cannot be adjusted.

To adjust the height: basic seat



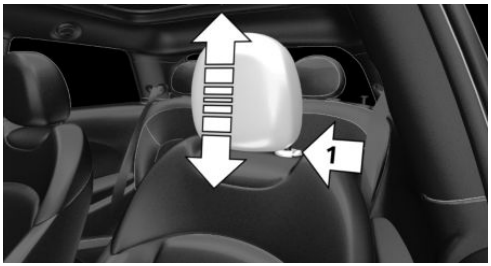
- ▷ To raise: push head restraint upwards.
- ▷ To lower: press button, arrow 1, and push head restraint down.

Removing: John Cooper Works sport seat

The head restraints cannot be removed.

To remove: basic seat

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Fold the seat backrest forward if needed.
2. Pull head restraint up as far as possible.
3. Press button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

Correctly adjusted head restraint

General information

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at eye level.

Safety information

WARNING

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury. Install head restraints on occupied seats prior to driving and make sure that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.◀

WARNING

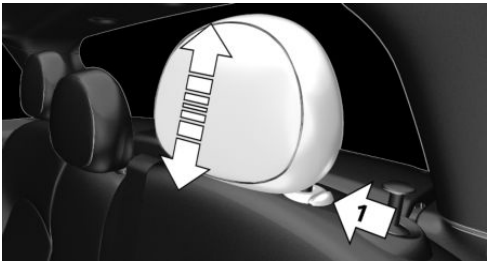
Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.◀

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

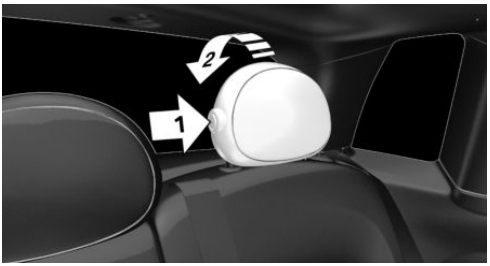
- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, e.g., clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, e.g., pillows, while driving.◀

Adjusting the height



- To raise: push head restraint upwards.
- To lower: press button, arrow 1, and push head restraint down.

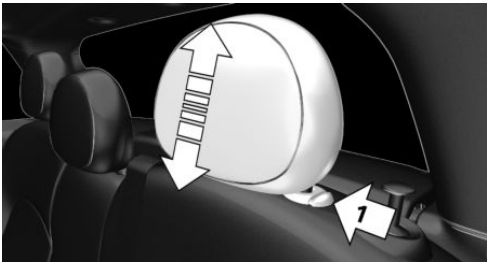
Folding down



- To lower flaps: press the button, arrow 1, and press down the head restraint, arrow 2.
- Fold back up: pull up head restraints.

Removing

Fold the rear backrest down, refer to page 156, before removing the head restraint, otherwise the head restraint cannot be removed.



1. Pull head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

MIRRORS

Exterior mirrors

General information

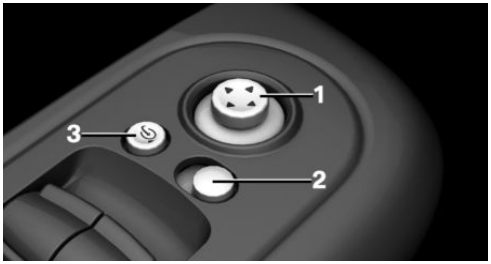
The mirror on the passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

Safety information

WARNING

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, e.g., while changing lanes. There is a risk of an accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.◀

Overview



1 Adjusting 57
2 Left/right, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Fold in and out 57

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

Adjusting electrically

Press button.

The mirror moves in accordance with the button movement.

Adjusting manually

In case of electrical malfunction press edges of mirror.

Fold in and out

NOTE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in vehicle washes. There is a risk of property damage. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.◀

Press button.

Possible at speeds up to approx.
15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the mirrors in and out is advantageous in the following situations:

- ▷ In car washes.
- ▷ On narrow roads.
- ▷ For folding mirrors back out that were folded away manually.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx.
25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever the engine is running.

Automatic dimming feature

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells are used to control the Interior mirror, refer to page 58.

Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror

The concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for example.

Activating

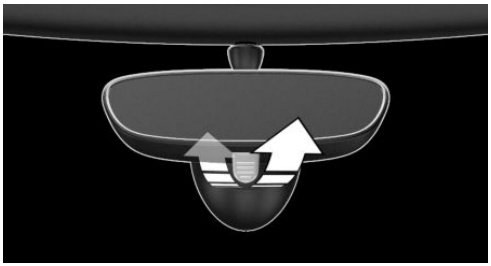
1. Slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger side mirror position.

Interior mirror, manually dimmable

Flip lever



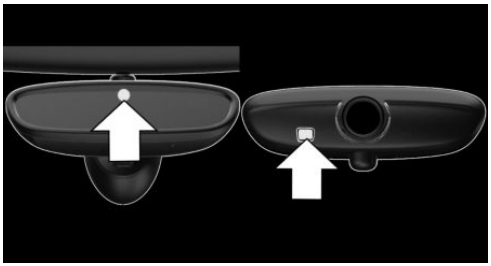
To reduce the blinding effect of the interior rear view mirror, flip the lever forward.

Turn knob

Turn the knob to reduce the blinding effect by the interior mirror.

Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature

Overview



Photocells are used for control:

- ▷ In the mirror glass.
- ▷ On the back of the mirror.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not cover the area between the inside rearview mirror and the windshield.

STEERING WHEEL

Safety information

WARNING

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.◂

Adjusting

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Fold the lever down.
3. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position.
4. Fold the lever back.
5. Switch off the ignition again if needed.

TRANSPORTING CHILDREN SAFELY

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

THE RIGHT PLACE FOR CHILDREN

Safety information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

Children should always be in the rear

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Only transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm in the rear in suitable child restraint systems provided in accordance with the age, weight and size of the child. Children 12 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight and size.

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight and size. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight and size.

Safety information

WARNING

Children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm cannot correctly fasten the safety belt without suitable additional restraint systems. The protective effect of the safety belts can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable restraint systems.◀

Children on the front passenger seat

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. Automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 105.

Safety information

WARNING

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up.◂

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◂

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

General information

Pay attention to the specifications of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

In order to faciliate the installation of a back-facing child restraint system in the rear:

Move the front passenger's seat as far up as possible before folding down the backrest.

Safety information

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◂

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

WARNING

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up.◂

After installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags automatically, refer to page 105.

Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust its height to the highest and thus best possible position for the belt and to offer optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchorage of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Child seat security

The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
3. Allow the strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when installing and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lb/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

WARNING

If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system can be limited. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest.◀

Position

The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, 2, of LATCH symbols. It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle seat belt instead for the middle seat.

Before installing LATCH child restraint fixing systems

Pull the belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

Assembly of LATCH child restraint systems

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

Child restraint fixing system with a tether strap

Safety information

NOTE

The mounting points for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only provided for these retaining straps. When other objects are mounted, the anchors can be damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Only mount child restraint systems to the upper retaining straps.◀

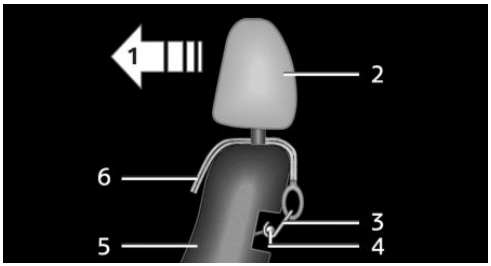
Mounting points

The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper Top Tether are marked with this symbol. It can be found on the rear seat backrest or the rear window shelf.

Retaining strap guide

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect can be reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not guided across sharp edges and without twisting to the upper retaining strap.◀



1 Direction of travel

2 Head restraint

3 Hook for upper retaining strap

4 Mounting point

5 Seat backrest

6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Raise the head restraint if needed.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports of the head restraint.
3. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the anchor on the rear seat.
4. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.

WARNING

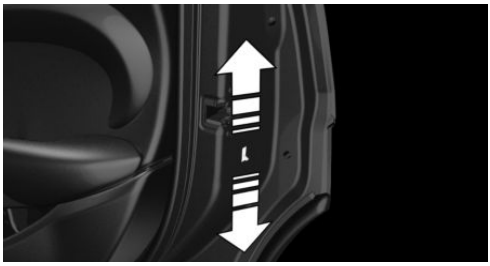
In case of an accident, people sitting in the back can come into contact with the tightened retaining strap of the child restraint system on the front passenger seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. With a mounted child restraint system, do not carry any people on the rear seat behind the front passenger seat.◀

WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or there is none. In particular situations, e.g., braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.◀

ON 5-DOOR MODELS: LOCKING THE DOORS AND WINDOWS

Doors



Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for the rear

Press button on the driver's door if children are being transported in the rear.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear: safety switch, refer to page 47.

DRIVING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

START/STOP BUTTON

The concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on or off and starts the engine.

Steptronic transmission: the engine starts in selector lever position P or N with the brake pedal pressed when you press the Start/Stop button.

Manual transmission: the engine starts with the clutch pedal pressed when the Start/Stop button is pressed.

Ignition on

Manual transmission: press the Start/Stop button without stepping on the clutch pedal.

Steptronic transmission: press the Start/Stop button, and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

All vehicle systems are ready for operation.

Most of the indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

Ignition off

Manual transmission: press the Start/Stop button again without stepping on the clutch pedal.

Steptronic transmission: shift to selector lever position P, press the Start/Stop button again without stepping on the brake.

All indicator lights in the instrument cluster go out.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

The ignition is switched off automatically in the following situations while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is off:

- ▷ During locking, also with the low beams activated.
- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started. This function is only available when the low beams are turned off.
- ▷ When opening and closing the driver door, if the driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the low beams are turned off.
- ▷ While the driver's safety belt is unbuckled with driver's door open and low beams off.
- ▷ When the front doors are opened if there is no other person sitting in the front seats.
- ▷ The low beams switch to parking lights after approx. 15 minutes of no use.

Radio ready state

Activate radio-ready state: when the engine is running: press the Start/Stop button.

Some electronic systems/power consumers remain ready for operation.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

The radio-ready state is switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ After approx. 8 minutes.
- ▷ When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system.
- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.

The radio-ready state remains active if, for example, the ignition is automatically switched off for the following reasons:

- ▷ Opening or closing the driver's door.
- ▷ Unfastening of the driver's safety belt.
- ▷ When automatically switching from low beams to parking lights.

If the engine is switched off and the ignition is switched on, the system automatically switches to the radio-ready state if the lights are turned off or, if correspondingly equipped, the daytime running lights are activated.

STARTING THE ENGINE

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

NOTE

In the case of repeated starting attempts or repeated starting in quick succession, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned. The catalytic converter can overheat. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid repeated starting in quick succession.◀

Steptronic transmission

Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Engage selector lever position P or N.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a certain time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Manual transmission

Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press on the clutch pedal and shift to neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a certain time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

ENGINE STOP

Safety information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

Before driving into a car wash

So that the vehicle can roll into a car wash observe instructions for going into an automatic car wash, refer to page 231.

Steptronic transmission

Switching off the engine

1. When the vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake.
2. Engage selector lever position P.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.

   The radio-ready state is switched on.

Manual transmission

Switching off the engine

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.

   The radio-ready state is switched on.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

AUTO START/STOP FUNCTION

Concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, e.g., in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on. The engine starts again automatically for driving off.

After every start of the engine using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is in the last selected state, refer to page 68. When the Auto Start/Stop function is active, it is available when the vehicle is traveling faster than about 3 mph/5 km/h.

Depending on the selected driving mode, refer to page 122, the system is automatically activated or deactivated.

Engine stop

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

Manual transmission:

- ▷ Neutral is engaged and the clutch pedal is not pressed.
- ▷ The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Steptronic transmission:

- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is stopped.
- ▷ The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

In order to be able to release the brake pedal, engage lever in position P. The engine remains off.

To continue driving depress the brake pedal. When a gear is engaged, the engine starts automatically.

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The display indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an Automatic engine start.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ External temperature too low.
- ▷ The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- ▷ The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- ▷ The engine is not yet at operating temperature.
- ▷ The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- ▷ After driving in reverse.
- ▷ Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▷ The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- ▷ At higher elevations.
- ▷ The engine compartment lid is unlocked.
- ▷ The parking assistant is activated.
- ▷ Stop-and-go traffic.
- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position R, N or M/S.

Starting the engine

The engine starts automatically under the following conditions:

- ▷ Manual transmission: clutch pedal is pressed.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: by releasing the brake pedal.

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- ▷ The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- ▷ The hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

Functional limitations

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Excessive warming of the car's interior when the cooling function is switched on.
- The steering wheel is turned.
- Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position D to R, N or M/S.
- Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position P to R, N, D or M/S.
- The vehicle begins rolling.
- Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.
- Manual transmission: low brake vacuum pressure; this can occur, for example, if the brake pedal is depressed a number of times in succession.

Switching the system on/off

Using the button

Press button.

- LED comes on: Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.

  The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

  The engine can only be stopped or started via the Start/Stop button.
- LED goes out: Auto Start/Stop function is activated.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, e.g., when leaving it.

Steptronic transmission:

1. Engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
3. Set the parking brake.

Manual transmission:

1. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

Engine start as usual via Start/Stop button.

Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, as it is detected that no driver is present.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

PARKING BRAKE

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

Applying

The lever automatically engages after being pulled up.

BRAKE The indicator lamp lights up red. The parking brake is set.

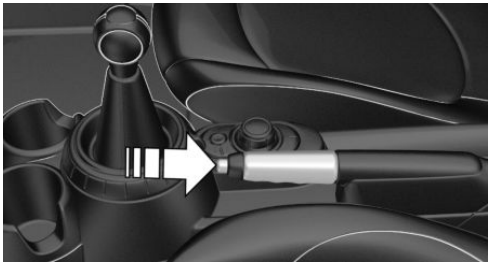
Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

If for once use during driving is required, engage the parking brake slightly and hold the button down.

To prevent corrosion and one-sided brake action, lightly apply the parking brake periodically while coasting, if traffic conditions permit.

The brake lights will not light up if the parking brake is set.

Releasing

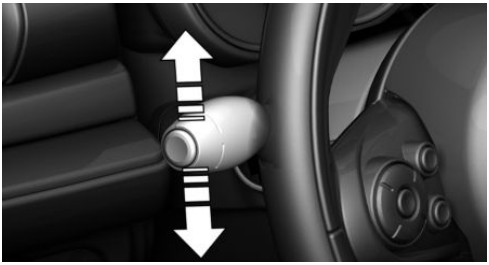


Raise lever slightly, press the button and guide the lever down.

TURN SIGNAL, HIGH BEAMS, HEADLIGHT FLASHER

Turn signal

Using turn signals



Press the lever past the resistance point.

The lever returns into its starting position after actuation.

To switch off manually, slightly tap the lever to the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The turn signal flashes three times.

The function can be activated or deactivated.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Triple turn signal"

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

Malfunction

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

High beams, headlight flasher

Push the lever forward or pull it backward.

- ▷ High beams, arrow 1.
- ▷ Headlight flasher, arrow 2.

WASHER/WIPER SYSTEM

General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

Safety information

WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.◀

NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of property damage. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.◀

Switching on

Tap up the lever or press it past the resistance point.

- ▷ Normal wiper speed: tap up once.

  The wipers switch to intermittent operation when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed: tap up twice or tap once beyond the resistance point.

  Wipers change to normal speed when vehicle comes to standstill.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Switching off and brief wipe

Press the lever down.

- ▷ To switch off from fast wiper speed: press down twice.
- ▷ To switch off from normal wiper speed: press down once.
- ▷ Single wipe: press down once.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Interval mode or rain sensor

Concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror. Without the rain sensor, the frequency of the wiper operation is preset.

Safety information

NOTE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of property damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.◀

Activating/deactivating

Press button on the wiper lever.

Wiping is started.

If the vehicle is equipped with a rain sensor: LED in wiper lever lights up.

If wipers are frozen to windshield, wiper operation is deactivated.

During trip interruption with the rain sensor switched on: if the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes, the rain sensor is automatically activated again.

Setting the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Up: short interval or high sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Down: long interval or low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

WARNING

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use antifreeze, if needed.◀

NOTE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.◀

Cleaning

Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while the ignition is switched on.

Rear window wiper

Switching on the rear window wiper

Turn the switch from idle position 0 upward, arrow 1: interval mode. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Clean the rear window

In interval mode: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.

In idle position: turn switch downward, arrow 3. The switch automatically returns to its idle position when released.

Fold-away position of the wipers

Concept

The fold-out position enables the wipers to be folded away from the windshield.

General information

Helpful when changing the wiper blades or under frosty conditions, e.g.

Safety information

WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.◂

Folding out the wipers

1. Switch the ignition on and off again.
2. With frosty conditions, make sure that the blades are not frozen to the windshield
3. Press the wiper lever up beyond the point of resistance and hold it for approx. 3 seconds, until the wipers remain in a nearly vertical position

4. Lift the wiper all the way off of the windshield.

Folding down the wipers

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Push wiper lever down. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

WASHER FLUID

General information

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water, windshield washer concentrate and, if required, antifreeze for the windshield washer system.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Safety information

WARNING

Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury. Observe the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: The washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.◀

WARNING

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down.

Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.◀

NOTE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.◀

NOTE

Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze agents can damage the washing system. There is a risk of property damage. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze agents. Observe the information and mixing ratios provided on the containers.◀

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below + 5 °F/- 15 °C.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

NOTE

When shifting to a lower gear, excessive speeds can damage the engine. There is a risk of property damage. When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right.◀

Shifting

General information

The engine speed during a shifting operation is adjusted automatically for harmonious and dynamic gear shifting.

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

To overcome the resistance push the gearshift lever dynamically to the left and engage reverse gear with a forward shifting movement.

STEPTRONIC TRANSMISSION

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

Selector lever positions

D Drive

Selector lever position for normal vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

R Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral

The vehicle may roll. Use in automatic car washes, for example.

P Park

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. The drive wheels are blocked.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance. Step on the accelerator pedal be-

yond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Engaging selector lever positions

General information

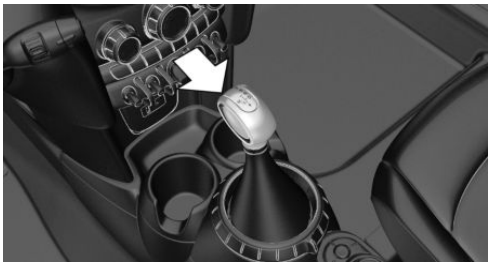
To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

The selector lever can only be taken out of selector lever position P if the ignition is on or the engine is running.

With the vehicle stationary, depress the brake pedal before shifting out of selector lever position P or N; otherwise, the shift block will not be deactivated and the shift command will not be executed.

Releasing the selector lever lock

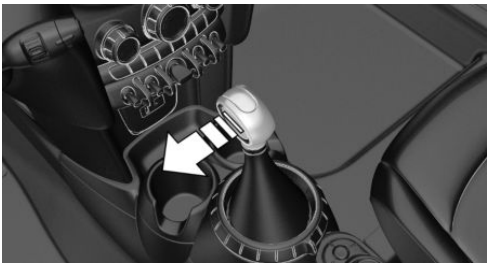
A lock prevents the inadvertent switching to selector lever position P or R or the inadvertent change from selector lever position P.



To release the lock: with the brake pedal depressed, press the button on the front of the selector lever, see arrow.

Sport program and manual mode M/S

Activating the sport program



Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for example, S1.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

Activating the M/S manual mode

1. Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D.
2. Push the selector lever forward or backward.

Manual mode M/S becomes active and the gear is changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for example, M1.

If the situation requires, the Steptronic transmission continues to shift automatically.

Example: once maximum engine speed is attained, M/S manual mode is automatically upshifted as needed.

Switching to manual mode

- ▷ To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- ▷ To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds, for example downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the currently selected gear.

Manual mode M/S: prevent automatic upshifting

Once a particular engine speed is attained, M/S manual mode is automatically upshifted as needed.

For vehicles with Steptronic Sport transmission, automatic shift operations are not performed if one of the following conditions is met:

- ▷ DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ TRACTION is activated.

In addition, there is no downshifting for kickdown.

With the respective transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by simultaneously operating the kickdown and the left shift paddles. This is not possible, when switching briefly via the shift paddles from selector lever position D to manual mode M/S.

Ending the sport program/manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles for Steptronic Sport transmission

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

- ▷ Shift up: briefly pull right shift paddle.
- ▷ Shift down: briefly pull left shift paddle.
- ▷ The lowest possible gear can be selected by pulling and holding the left shift paddles.

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds, for example downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

If the shift paddles on the steering wheel are used to shift gears in automatic mode, the transmission switches to manual mode temporarily in selector lever position D and permanently in selector lever position S.

In selector lever position D, after conservative driving for a certain amount of time in manual mode or if there has been no acceleration or shifting of the shift paddles within a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

It is possible to switch from manual mode into the automatic mode at any time:

- ▷ Pull and hold right shift paddle.

  Or
- ▷ In addition to the briefly pulled right shift paddle, briefly pull the left shift paddle.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selector lever position is displayed, for example: P.

Manually release the transmission lock

Should the selector lever be blocked in selector lever position P despite the ignition being switched on, the brake being depressed and the button on the selector lever being pressed, the transmission lock can be canceled manually:

Before unlocking the transmission lock manually, engage the parking brake forcefully to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

1. Loosen the selector lever sleeve together with the lower retaining ring and, if required, the MINI Driving Modes switch from the center console. To do so, pull the retaining ring and, if required, the MINI Driving Modes switch upward at the rear edge.

2. Lift the sleeve. Unplug the cable connector, if needed.
3. Using the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 215, press the yellow release lever downward, see arrow.

4. Move the selector lever slightly toward the rear; to do this press the button on the front of the selector lever.

   Release the release lever.
5. Bring the selector lever into the desired position.

Steptronic Sport transmission: Launch Control

Concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in, refer to page 164, period.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode, refer to page 120.

Requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is warmed up, that is, after uninterrupted driving of at least 6 miles/10 km.

To start with Launch Control do not steer the steering wheel.

Start with launch control

While the engine is running:

1.

Press button and select SPORT with the MINI Driving Modes switch, refer to page 122.

   The instrument cluster displays TRACTION in combination with SPORT. The DSC OFF indicator lamp lights up.
2. Engage selector lever position S.
3. With the left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
4. Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

A flag symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster.

5. The starting engine speed adjusts. Within 3 seconds, release the brake.

Before using Launch Control, allow the transmission to cool down for approx. 5 minutes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

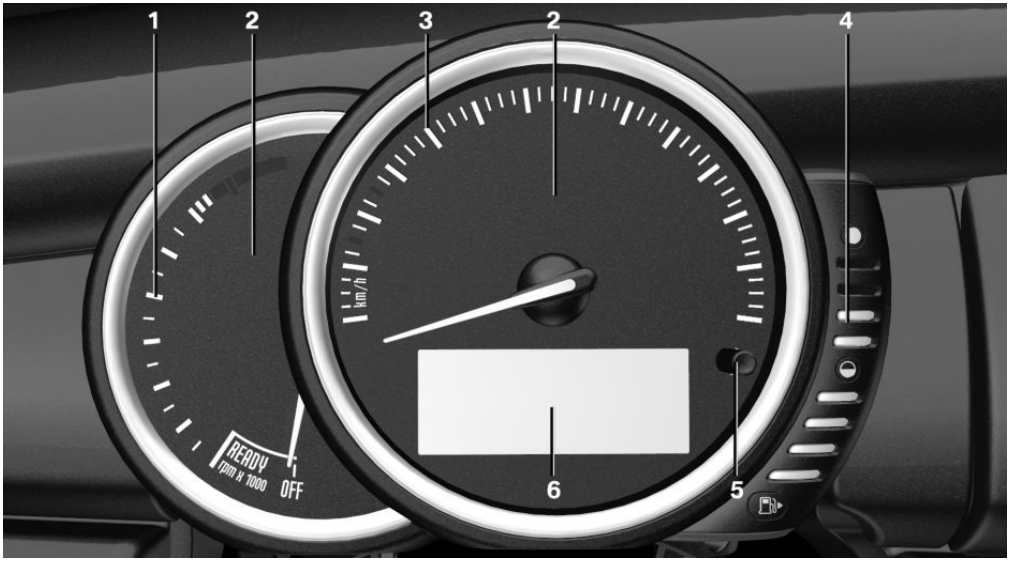
DISPLAYS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

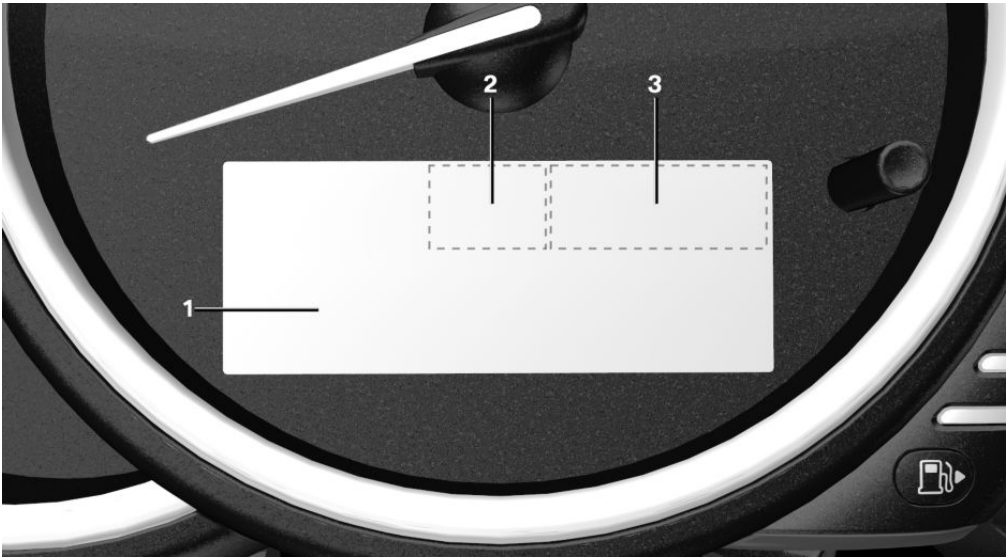
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Overview, instrument cluster



1 Tachometer 84
2 Indicator/warning lights
3 Speedometer
4 Fuel gauge 84
5 Display/reset miles 84
6 Electronic displays 80

Electronic displays



1 Driver assistance systems
Messages, e.g., Check Control
Time 84
External temperature 84
Selection lists 88
Total miles/trip odometer 84
Onboard computer 88

2 Selector lever position 74
Gear shift indicator 86

3 MINI Driving Modes switch status 122
Status

CHECK CONTROL

Concept

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

Indicator/warning lights

General information

The indicator and warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Red lights

Safety belt reminder

Indicator lamp flashes or illuminates: safety belt on the driver or front passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

Airbag system

Airbag system and belt tensioner are not working.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake, brake system

The parking brake is set.

For additional information, refer to Release parking brake, refer to page 69.

Approach control warning

Indicator lamp illuminates: advance warning is issued, e.g., when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

Increase distance.

Indicator lamp flashes: acute warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another vehicle at a relatively high differential speed.

Intervention by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Pedestrian warning

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, the symbol lights up and a signal sounds.

Orange lights

Active Cruise Control

The number bars shows the selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead.

For more information, see Camera-based cruise control, refer to page 124.

Vehicle detection, Active Cruise Control

Indicator lamp illuminates: a vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

Indicator lamp flashes: the conditions are not adequate for the system to work.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Yellow lights

Anti-lock Braking System ABS

Braking force boost may not be working. Avoid sudden braking. Stop cautiously. Take the longer braking distance into account.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and adapt driving style to the driving circumstances.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

For additional information, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC, refer to page 120.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

For additional information, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC, refer to page 120, and Dynamic Traction Control DTC, refer to page 121.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The Flat Tire Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

For additional information, refer to Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 110.

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

The indicator lamp illuminates.

The Tire Pressure Monitor signals a low tire inflation pressure or a flat tire.

Observe the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator lamp flashes and then illuminates continuously.

No flat tire or loss of tire inflation pressure can be detected.

- ▷ Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▷ TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▷ A wheel without TPM electronics is mounted: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

For additional information, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 106.

Steering system

Steering system in some cases not working.

Have the steering system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Engine functions

Engine function impaired.

Have the vehicle checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

For additional information, refer to On-board Diagnostics socket, refer to page 214.

Rear fog lamp

Rear fog lights are activated.

For additional information, refer to Rear fog lights, refer to page 101.

Green lights

Turn signal

Turn signal switched on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

For additional information, refer to Turn signal, refer to page 69.

Parking lights, headlight control

Parking lights or headlights are activated.

For additional information, refer to Parking lights/low beams, headlight control, refer to page 98.

Front fog lights

Front fog lights are activated.

For additional information, refer to Front fog lights, refer to page 101.

High-beam Assistant

High-beam Assistant is switched on.

High beams are activated and off automatically as a function of the traffic situation.

For additional information, refer to High-beam Assistant, refer to page 100.

Cruise control

The system is switched on. It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

Blue lights

High beams

High beams are activated.

For additional information, refer to High beams, refer to page 70.

General lamps

At least one Check Control message is displayed or is stored.

Text messages

Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator and warning lights.

Supplementary text messages

Additional information, such as on the cause of an error or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Symbols

Within the supplementary text, the following functions can be selected independent of the check control message.

▷ Display additional information about the Check Control message in the Integrated Owner's Manual.

▷ "Service request"

Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

▷ "Roadside Assistance"

Contact Roadside Assistance.

Hiding Check Control messages

Press and hold button on turn signal lever.

▷ Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

These messages can be faded for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

▷ Other Check Control messages are faded automatically after approx. 20 seconds. They are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Check Control"
4. Select the text message.

Messages after trip completion

Special messages displayed while driving are displayed again after the ignition is switched off.

FUEL GAUGE

Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

The arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

Notes on refueling, refer to page 182.

When the reserve fuel level is reached, the yellow indicator lamp is illuminated.

TACHOMETER

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

ODOMETER AND TRIP ODOMETER

Concept

The total number of kilometers driven and the number of kilometers driven since the last reset are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Reset the trip odometer

Press the knob.

- ▷ The odometer is displayed when the ignition is switched off.
- ▷ When the ignition is switched on, the trip odometer is reset.

EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE

WARNING

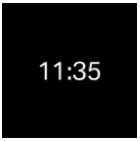
Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a risk of icy roads, e.g., on bridges or shady sections of road. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.◀

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

TIME



The time is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Setting the time on the Control Display, refer to page 91.

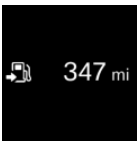
DATE

The date is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Set the date on the Control Display, refer to page 92.

RANGE

Display



With a low remaining range:

- ▷ A Check Control message is displayed briefly.
- ▷ The remaining range is shown on the onboard computer.

▷ With a dynamic driving style, for example taking curves aggressively, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

NOTE

With a range of less than 30 miles/50 km it is possible that the engine will no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.◀

Displaying the cruising range

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "Range"

CURRENT FUEL CONSUMPTION

The concept

Displays the current fuel consumption. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Displaying the current fuel consumption

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "Current consumption"

SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

Concept

The function displays the necessary service requirements and the corresponding maintenance procedures.

General information

After the ignition is turned on the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service requirements from your remote control.

Display

Detailed information on service requirements

More information on the scope of service required can be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"

   Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	No service is currently required.
	The deadline for scheduled maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
	The service deadline has already passed.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the mandatory vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"
4. "§ Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Adjust the settings.
7. Confirm.

   The entered date is stored.

GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR

The concept

The system recommends the most fuel efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General information

Depending on the vehicle's features and country version of the vehicle, the gear shift indicator is active in the manual mode of the Steptronic transmission and with manual transmission.

Suggestions to shift gear up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Manual transmission: displaying

Example	Description
3	Fuel efficient gear is set.
3▸4	Shift into fuel efficient gear.

Steptronic transmission: displaying

Example	Description
M3	Fuel efficient gear is set.
3▸4	Shift into fuel efficient gear.

SPEED LIMIT DETECTION

Speed Limit Info

Concept

Speed Limit Info shows the current maximum permitted speed in the instrument cluster.

General information

The camera at the base of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts. Traffic signs with extra symbols for wet road conditions, etc. are also detected and compared with the vehicle's onboard data, such as for the rain sensor, and will be displayed depending on the situation.

With the navigation system, the system takes into account the information stored in the navigation data and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

Without a navigation system, the system is subject to limitations imposed by technology. Traffic signs with speed limitations are detected and displayed only. Speed limitations due to entering or exiting towns, highway signs, etc. are not displayed. Speed limits with extra text characters are always displayed.

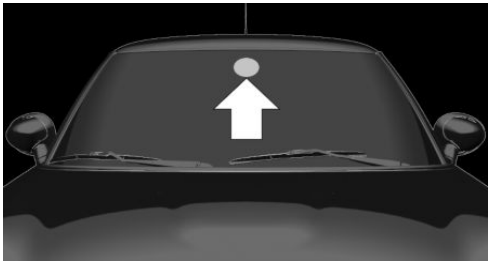
Safety information

WARNING

The system does not release from the personal responsibility to correctly assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◂

Overview

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior mirror clean and clear.

Display

Speed limit detection is displayed via the on-board computer.

Press button on the turn signal lever several times, if needed.

Speed limit detection is displayed on the CID (central information display) in the instrument cluster.

Speed Limit Info

The last speed limit detected.

Without a navigation system the traffic signals are grayed out after curves or longer stretches of roadway.

With navigation system: speed limit detection is not available.

Without navigation system: no speed limit or cancellation is detected.

Speed Limit Info can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- ▷ When signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections.
- ▷ When the windshield behind the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
- ▷ In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
- ▷ If the speed limits stored in the navigation system are incorrect.
- ▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▷ When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.

- When passing buses or trucks with a speed sticker.
- If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- When signs are detected valid for a parallel road.

SELECTION LISTS IN THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

General information

With the buttons on the steering wheel and the display in the instrument cluster the following can be displayed or operated:

- Current audio source.
- Redial phone feature.
- Turn on voice activation system.

Activating a list and adjusting the setting

Button the steering wheel	Function
⇧ ⇩	Activate the respective list and select the desired settings.
OK	Confirm the selection.

Display

ON-BOARD COMPUTER

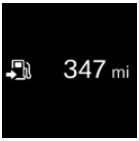
Calling up information on the info display

Press and hold button on blinker lever.

Information is displayed in the info display of the instrument cluster.

Information at a glance

CID (central information display)



Repeatedly pressing the button on the turn signal lever calls up the following information in the CID (central information display):

- Range.
- GREEN Info.

  When GREEN Mode is activated.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Current fuel consumption.
- Average speed.
- Date.
- Engine temperature display.
- With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation:

  Distance to destination.

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation:

  Time of arrival.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.

▷ Speed limit detection.

▷ Speed.

The unit of some information can be changed.

Setting units, refer to page 92.

Selecting information

You can select what information from the onboard computer is to be displayed on the CID (central information display) of the instrument cluster.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. Select the desired information.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Information in detail

Range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel.

It is calculated based on your driving style over the last 20 miles/30 km.

GREEN info

Description of GREEN info, refer to page 175.

Average fuel consumption

This is calculated for the period while the engine is running.

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the distance traveled since the last reset by the onboard computer.

Average speed

Periods in which the vehicle is parked with the engine manually stopped are not included in the calculation of the average speed.

Resetting average values

Press and hold button on turn signal lever.

Engine temperature display

Displays the current engine temperature, based on a combination of coolant and engine oil temperature. As soon as the optimum operating temperature has been attained, the indicator is in the center position.

If the engine oil or coolant, thus the engine, become too hot, a Check Control message is displayed.

When the engine temperature is too high, a red indicator lamp is displayed.

When the engine oil temperature is too high, a red indicator lamp is displayed.

Check the coolant level, refer to page 211.

With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation: distance to destination

The distance remaining to the destination is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The distance to the destination is adopted automatically.

With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation: time of arrival

The estimated time of arrival is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The time must be correctly set.

Speed limit detection

Speed limit detection is preset. Description of the speed limit detection, refer to page 86, function.

Trip onboard computer

The vehicle features two types of onboard computers.

- ▷ "Onboard info": the values can be reset as often as necessary.
- ▷ "Trip computer": the values provide an overview of the current trip.

Resetting the trip onboard computer

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Trip computer"
3. "Reset": all values are reset.

   "Automatically reset": all values are reset approx. 4 hours after the vehicle came to a standstill.

Display on the Control Display

Display the onboard computer or trip onboard computer on the Control Display.

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

Resetting the fuel consumption and speed

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Onboard info"
3. "Consumpt." or "Speed"
4. "Yes"

DRIVING EXCITEMENT

The concept

On the Control Display, sport instruments can be displayed, and the vehicle condition can be checked before the use of the SPORT program.

Sport instruments

On the Control Display, values for power and torque are displayed.

Displaying sport instruments

Via onboard monitor:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Driving Excitement"
3. "Sports instruments"

Via MINI Driving Modes switch:

1. Activate SPORT.
2. "Driving Excitement"
3. "Sports instruments"

Vehicle state

The following vehicle and surrounding area data is automatically checked and evaluated in succession:

- ▷ Range.
- ▷ Engine temperature.
- ▷ External temperature.
- ▷ SPORT program state.

Finally, a total evaluation of the vehicle state is displayed.

Checking vehicle state

Via onboard monitor:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Driving Excitement"
3. "Vehicle and surroundings"

Via MINI Driving Modes switch:

1. Activate SPORT.
2. "Driving Excitement"
3. "Vehicle and surroundings"

SPEED WARNING

Concept

It is possible to set a speed limit which, when reached, will trigger a warning.

General information

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit once by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing the limit

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning at:"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired limit is displayed.
5. Press the Controller.

The speed limit is stored.

Activating/deactivating the limit

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning"
4. Press the Controller.

Setting your current speed as the limit

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"
4. Press the Controller.

   The current vehicle speed is stored as the limit.

SETTINGS ON THE CONTROL DISPLAY

Time

Setting the time zone

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time zone:"
4. Select the desired time zone.

The time zone is stored.

Setting the time

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time:"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
5. Press the Controller.
6. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

The time is stored.

Setting the time format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.

The time format is stored.

Date

Setting the date

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
5. Press the Controller.
6. Make the necessary settings for the month and year.

The date is stored.

Setting the date format

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.

The date format is stored.

Language

Setting the language

To set the language on the Control Display:

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"
4. Select the desired language.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Setting the voice dialog

Voice dialog for the voice activation system, refer to page 27.

Units of measurement

Setting the units of measurement

To set the units for fuel consumption, route/distance and temperature:

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. Select the desired menu item.
4. Select the desired unit.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Brightness.

Setting the brightness

To set the brightness of the Control Display:

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the Controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

LED RING ON THE CENTRAL INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

The concept

The LED ring displays light animations to represent specific functions.

Basic displays

Basic functions, for example the tachometer, can be set to be displayed continually if so desired.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Event displays

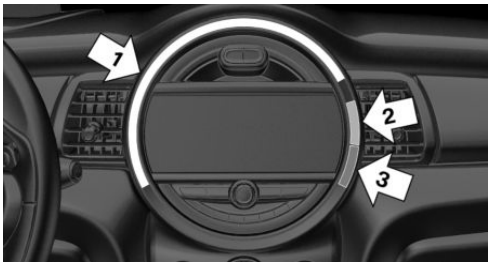
Functions that are only displayed temporarily, for example the volume or temperature settings, can be set as event displays.

Several vehicle assistance functions can also be displayed on the LED ring. This display corresponds with the displays of the function in the respective display.

Example: tachometer

Like the tachometer in the instrument cluster, the light animations of the tachometer's basic display show the current RPMs and the respective RPM warning margins.

Display



▷ Arrow 1: current RPM.

▷ Arrow 2: prewarning field.

▷ Arrow 3: warning field.

Switching on/off LED ring

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Center Instrument"
3. "Center Instrument"

Adjusting the LED ring

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Center Instrument"
3. "Basic display" or "Event display"
4. Select desired setting.

Setting the brightness

The brightness can be adjusted when night lighting is active in the instrument cluster.

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Center Instrument"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

HEAD-UP DISPLAY

The concept

This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, e. g., the speed.

The driver can quickly absorb information and concentrate on the traffic situation.

Safety information

WARNING

When extending and retracting the projection screen of the Head-up Display, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the projection screen is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

The Head-up Display consists of sensitive components that can easily be scraped or damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not place any objects on the Head-up Display, attach to system components or plug into the system. Do not move the moving parts manually.◀

Follow the instructions for cleaning the Head-up Display, refer to page 234.

Overview

Display visibility

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- ▷ Certain sitting positions.
- ▷ Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- ▷ Wet roads.
- ▷ Unfavorable light conditions.

Switching on/off

When switching on, the projection lens of the Head-up Display is extended. When switching off, the projection lens of the Head-up Display is retracted again.

Press button.

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:

- ▷ Speed.
- ▷ Navigation system.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Selection list from the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

On the Control Display:

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. Select the desired displays in the Head-up Display.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The basic setting can be adjusted.

On the Control Display:

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the controller.

When the low beams are activated, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting, refer to page 101.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Adjusting the height

On the Control Display:

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Height"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired height is reached.
5. Press the Controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Setting the rotation

The screen of the Head-up Display can be rotated around its own axis.

On the Control Display:

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Rotation"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is selected.
5. Press the Controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

John Cooper Works: Sport displays in the Head-up Display

General information

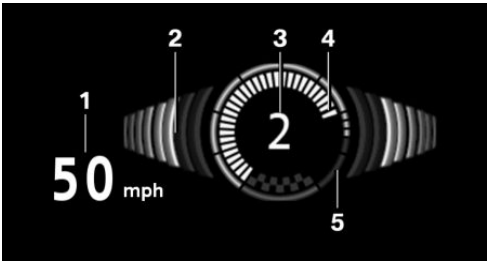
The sport displays in the Head-up Display assist with a sporty driving style.

Switching on

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. "Sport displays"

With navigation system: if the sport displays are switched on, no navigation content will be displayed on the Head-up Display.

Display



1 Speed

2 Shift point indicator

3 Gear display

4 Current engine speed

5 Warning field, speed

Shift point indicator

Concept

Shift point indicator in the Head-up Display indicates the optimum shifting point. Thus, with a sporty driving style, the best possible vehicle acceleration is achieved.

Functional requirements

▷ Steptronic transmission:

Manual mode M/S and, if necessary, the Dynamic Traction Control DTC are activated.

▷ Press the accelerator pedal all the way down.

Switching on

Shift point indicators are displayed in the Head-up if the sport displays, refer to page 95,are switched on.

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. "Sport displays"

Display

Successive gray illuminated fields indicate the upcoming shift moment.

As soon as the red fields light up, shift up immediately.

When the permitted maximum speed is reached, all shift point indicators flash.

When the maximum speed is exceeded, the supply of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

CHRONO PACKAGE IN THE COCKPIT

The concept

The Chrono package consists of three display instruments in the cockpit, where the engine oil pressure, the turbocharger boost, and the time are displayed. In addition, intermediate and total times can be measured using the stop watch.

The display elements of the Chrono package mainly support a sporty driving style, e,g, on racetracks.

Overview

1 Engine oil pressure display

2 Display of turbocharger boost

3 Time/stop watch

Engine oil pressure

The current engine oil pressure is displayed. At low temperatures, there can be an increase in the engine oil pressure.

Turbocharger boost

The current boost of the engine's turbocharger is displayed.

Stop watch

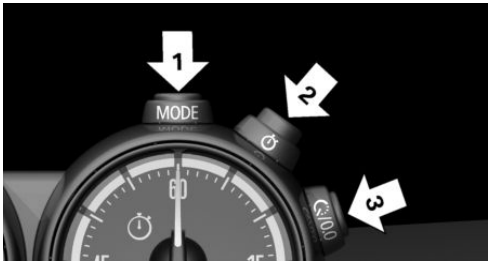
General information

The stop watch contains the following features:

- ▷ Measuring the total time.
- ▷ Measuring and storing of up to nine lap times.
- ▷ Displaying the time.

⏱ The red indicator light indicates that the stop watch is active.

Overview, buttons



- ▷ MODE button, arrow 1.
- ▷ START/STOP button, arrow 2.
- ▷ RESET/LAP buttons, arrow 3.

Displaying the measured times

The times measured using the stop watch are shown in minutes and seconds on the display. For times greater than 60 minutes, the numbers of hours and the minutes with seconds are alternatively displayed.

If the stop watch is running, the seconds are also shown using a seconds pointer in the scale of the display element.

Measuring the total time

1. Press button, arrow 2, to start the stop watch.
2. Press button, arrow 2, again to stop the stop watch.

Lap times

General information

It is possible to measure and store up to nine lap times. Older lap times are overwritten.

Measuring and storing a lap time

1. Press button, arrow 2, to start the stop watch.
2. Press button, arrow 3, to measure and store a lap time.

   The lap time is briefly shown in the display and via the seconds pointer of the stop watch, for example, LAP 1 with the measured time. The stop watch continues running in the background.
3. If needed, press button, arrow 3, again to measure a further lap time.

Calling up lap times

1. Press button, arrow 1, repeatedly until LAP 1 is shown on the display.
2. Press button, arrow 2, to call up the individual lap times.

Deleting lap times

1. Press button, arrow 1, repeatedly until LAP 1 is shown on the display.
2. Press button, arrow 3, to delete all stored lap times.

Displaying the time

The time is copied from the instrument cluster.

Press button, arrow 1, repeatedly until the time is displayed.

LIGHTS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

OVERVIEW

Switches in the vehicle

The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Light functions

Symbol	Function
	Rear fog lights
	Front fog lights
	Automatic headlamp control
0	Lights off Daytime running lights
	Parking lights
	Low beams
	Instrument lighting

PARKING LIGHTS, CORNERING LIGHTS AND ROADSIDE PARKING LIGHTS

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ,

If the driver door is opened with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off at these switch settings.

Parking lights

Position of switch:

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, the battery may become discharged and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

When parking, switch on the one-sided roadside parking lamp, refer to page 99.

Low beams

Position of switch:

The low beams light up when the ignition is switched on.

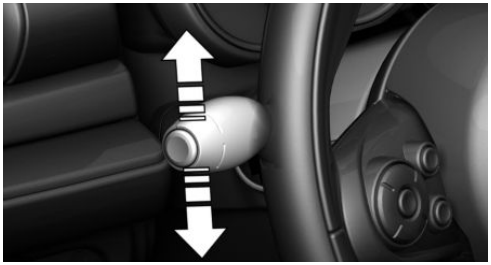
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Roadside parking lights

The concept

The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

Switching on



With the ignition switched off, press the lever either up or down past the resistance point for approx. 2 seconds.

Switching off

Briefly press the lever to the resistance point in the opposite direction.

WELCOME LIGHTS AND HEADLIGHT COURTESY DELAY FEATURE

Welcome lights

General information

Depending on the equipment, when switching off the vehicle, switch position ≡D or ≡A .

Depending on the ambient brightness, individual light functions may be switched on briefly, when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activating/deactivating

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Welcome lights"

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Headlight courtesy delay feature

General information

The low beams stay lit for a short while if the headlight flasher is switched on after the vehicle's radio-ready state is switched off.

Setting the duration

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway lighting:"
4. Set length of time.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

AUTOMATIC HEADLAMP CONTROL

The concept

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

When emerging from a tunnel during the day, the low beams are not switched off immediately but instead only after approx. 2 minutes.

Activating

Position of switch: ≡A

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated, when the low beams are switched on.

System limits

The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

E.g. the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks under these conditions, you should always switch on the lights manually.

DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ≡D ⊂≡ , ≡D

The daytime running lights light up when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched off, the parking lights light up in position ≡D ⊂≡ .

Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights.

On the Control Display:

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"

Settings are stored for the remote control currently used.

CORNERING LIGHT

General information

Position of switch: ≡D

When going around corners, the cornering light also lights the interior area of the curve. Below a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h when the turn signal is switched on and the steering angle is detected, there is automatic activation.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

Cornering light is malfunctioning or has failed. Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

HIGH-BEAM ASSISTANT

The concept

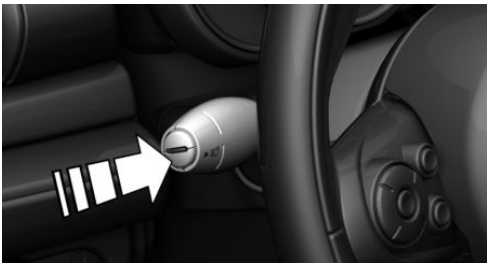
The high-beam Assistant detects other traffic participants early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation. The assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

General information

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, e.g., in towns and cities.

The driver can intervene at any time and switch the high beams on and off as usual.

Activating



1. Depending on the equipment, turn the light switch into position ≡D or ≡D .
2. Press button on the turn signal lever, arrow.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated, when the low beams are switched on.

The high beams are switched on and off automatically.

The blue indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

Deactivating

The High-beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off, refer to page 70.

To reactivate the High-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

System limits

The High-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. Therefore, manually switch off the high beams in situations where required to avoid a safety risk.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- ▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.
- ▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- ▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- ▷ When the windshield behind the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

FOG LIGHTS

Front fog lights

The low beams must be switched on.

Press button. The green indicator lamp lights up.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 99, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lights.

When the high beams or headlight flasher are activated, the front fog lights are not switched on.

Rear fog lights

The low beams or front fog lights must be switched on.

Press button. The yellow indicator lamp lights up.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 99, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the rear fog lights.

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING

Adjusting

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

INTERIOR LIGHTS

General information

Depending on the equipment, the interior lights, footwell lights, entry lamps, and courtesy lamps are controlled automatically.

Thumb wheel for the instrument lighting controls brightness of some of these features.

Overview

1 Interior lights

2 Reading lights

3 Ambient light

Switching the interior lights on and off

Press button.

To switch off permanently: press the button for approx. 3 seconds.

Switch back on: press button.

Switching the reading lamps on and off manually

Press button.

Reading lights are located in the front next to the interior light.

Ambient light

Depending on your optional features lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the interior.

Activating/deactivating

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Ambient:"

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Changing color

Push the switch forward or back: manual color change.

Push and hold the switch forward or back: automatic color change. Push the switch again to end color changes.

Setting the brightness

Depending on the equipment, the brightness of the ambient light can be adjusted via the thumbwheel for the instrument lighting or on the Control Display.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Brightness:"
4. Adjust the brightness.

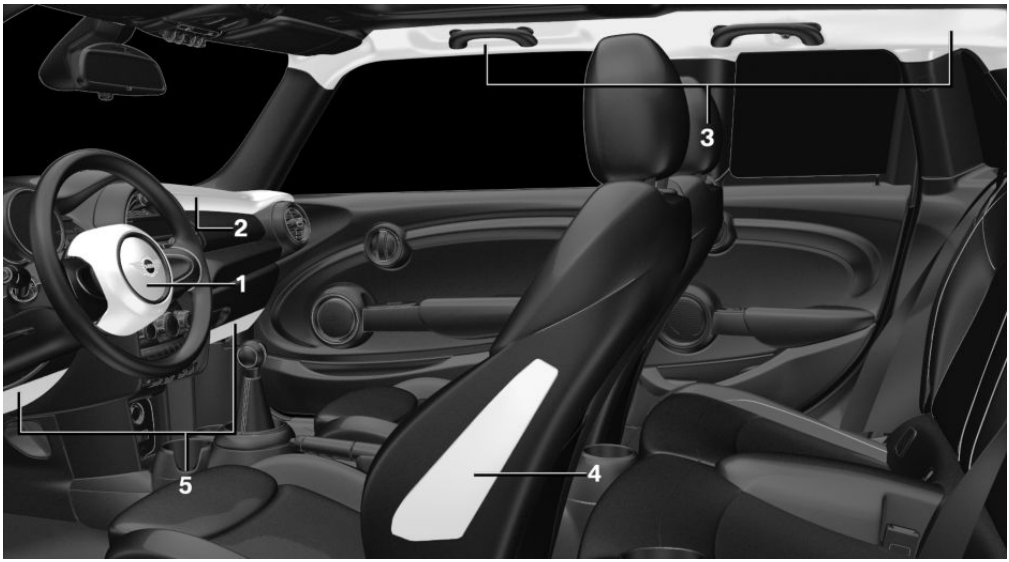
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

SAFETY

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

AIRBAGS



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate restraint.

Side airbag

In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

Head airbag

In a lateral impact, the head airbag supports the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side impact events.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag supports the legs in a frontal impact.

Protective action

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

Information on optimum effect of the airbags

WARNING

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot protect as intended or may cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the information on optimum protective effect of the airbag system.◀

- ▷ Keep a distance from the airbags.
- ▷ Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- ▷ Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- ▷ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
- ▷ There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- ▷ Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- ▷ Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- ▷ Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- ▷ Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- ▷ Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- ▷ Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- ▷ Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; therefore, contact MINI Customer Relations or your authorized MINI service center.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Functional readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

WARNING

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.◂

WARNING

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended in the event of an accident despite respective accident severity. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◂

Correct function

When the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioner.

Airbag system malfunctioning

- ▷ Warning lamp does not come on when the ignition is turned on.
- ▷ The warning lamp lights up continuously.

Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

The concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee and side airbag on the front passenger's side are either activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety notes and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

WARNING

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.◂

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion.

- ▷ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- ▷ Do not place any electronic devices on the passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- ▷ Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.

▷ No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbags.

The lamp indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint fixing system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.

▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when, for example, a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child seats

The system generally detects children seated in a child seat, particularly in child seats required by NHTSA when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child seat, make sure that the indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child seat has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

The explosive power that activates driver's/front passenger's airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger's seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long-term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a relevant Check Control message is displayed. A message also appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.

1. Move the respective seat all the way forward.
2. Move the respective seat forward again. It moves forward briefly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the Check Control message disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR TPM

The concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if

there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires. For this purpose, sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure.

General information

With use of the system observe further information found under Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 186.

Functional requirements

The system must have been reset with the correct tire inflation pressure; otherwise, reliable signaling of tire pressure loss is not assured.

Reset the system after each adjustment of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics to ensure that the system will operate properly.

Status display

The current status of the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the TPM is active.

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM)"

The status is displayed.

Status control display

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the tires and a SMS text message on the Control Display.

All wheels green

System is active and will issue a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One wheel is yellow

A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire.

All wheels are yellow

A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in several tires.

Wheels, gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire due to a malfunction.

Status information

The status control display additionally shows the current tire inflation pressures. It shows the actual values read; they may vary depending on driving style or weather conditions.

Reset the system

Reset the system after each adjustment of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

On the Control Display and on the vehicle:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. RESET "Perform reset"
4. Start the engine but do not drive off.
5. Reset the tire inflation pressure using "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The tires are shown in gray and the status is displayed.

After driving faster than 19 mph/30 km/h for a short period, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as reference values. The resetting process is completed automatically while driving. After successful completion of the reset, the tires appear in green on the Control Display and "Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM) active" is displayed.

The progress of the reset is displayed.

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

Messages

Required tire inflation pressure check message

A Check Control message is displayed.

▷ The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done.

▷ No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

▷ Inflation was not carried out according to specifications.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset.

In these cases:

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Reset the system.

Message in case of low tire pressure

The yellow warning lamp lights up.

A Check Control message is displayed.

▷ There is a tire inflation pressure loss.

▷ No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

In these cases:

1. Reduce your speed and drive moderately. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, e.g., gas station, check and correct the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, if necessary.
3. Reset the system.

Message in case of sharp tire inflation pressure loss

The yellow warning lamp lights up.

A symbol with the affected tires will be displayed in the Check Control message.

▷ There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

▷ No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

In these cases:

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 196, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.◀

A low tire inflation pressure might turn on DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

Check the air pressure in all four tires, e.g. using the tire pressure gage of a tire repair kit.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Repair the flat tire, e.g. with a tire repair kit or by changing the tire.

Use of tire sealant, for example, the Mobility System, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked at the next opportunity and have them replaced if needed.

Run-flat tires

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is shown to be correct, it is possible that the Tire Pressure Monitor did not perform a reset. Then perform the reset.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The possible driving distance after a loss of tire inflation pressure depends on cargo load, driving style and road conditions.

A vehicle with an average load has a possible driving range of approx. 50 miles/80 km.

A vehicle with a damaged tire reacts differently, e.g., it has reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and different self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be shorter or longer depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.

WARNING

Your vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire is damaged and has low or missing tire inflation pressure, e.g., your lane stability is reduced when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.◂

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

The system does not function properly if a reset has not been carried out, e.g., a flat tire is reported though tire inflation pressures are correct.

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature. Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure. The tire in-

flation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again. These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. No flat tire or loss of tire pressure can be detected.

Examples and recommendations in the following situations:

- ▷ A wheel without TPM electronics, for example an emergency wheel, is mounted: Have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: Have system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▷ Interference through systems or devices with the same radio frequency: After leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.

Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

FTM FLAT TIRE MONITOR

The concept

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

It detects a tire inflation pressure loss by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels while moving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. This will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirements

The system must have been initialized when the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable flagging of a flat tire is not assured. Initialize the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the FTM is active.

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor (FTM)"

The status is displayed.

Initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Perform reset"
4. Start the engine but do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Indication of a flat tire

The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 196, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.◂

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on if needed.

System limits

A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- ▷ When the system has not been initialized.
- ▷ When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- ▷ Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Check the air pressure in all four tires, e.g. using the tire pressure gage of a tire repair kit.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g. with a tire repair kit or by changing the tire.

Run-flat tires

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The possible driving distance after a loss of tire inflation pressure depends on cargo load, driving style and road conditions.

A vehicle with an average load has a possible driving range of approx. 50 miles/80 km.

A vehicle with a damaged tire reacts differently, e.g., it has reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and different self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be shorter or longer depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.

WARNING

Your vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire is damaged and has low or missing tire inflation pressure, e.g., your lane stability is reduced when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.◀

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

INTELLIGENT SAFETY

The concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance system.

The intelligent safety systems can help prevent an imminent collision.

▷ Front-end collision warning with City Braking function, refer to page 113.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

▷ Person warning with City light braking function, refer to page 116.

Safety information

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve the driver from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g., approach control warning with light braking function. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

Press button briefly:

▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.

▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Press button again:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.

▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.

▷ The LED goes out.

FRONT-END COLLISION WARNING WITH CITY BRAKING FUNCTION

The concept

The system can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be prevented, the system will help reduce the collision speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and actuates brakes independently if needed.

The automatic braking intervention is done with limited force and duration.

The system is controlled via a camera in the base of the mirror.

The front-end collision warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the collision warning and braking

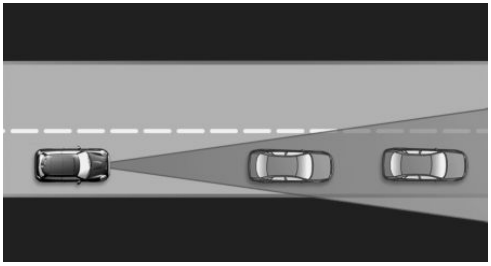
are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

General information

The system warns at two levels of an imminent danger of collision at speeds from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. Time of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Appropriate braking kicks in at speeds of up to 35 mph/60 km/h.

Detection range



It responds to objects if they are detected by the system.

Safety information

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve the driver from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◂

WARNING

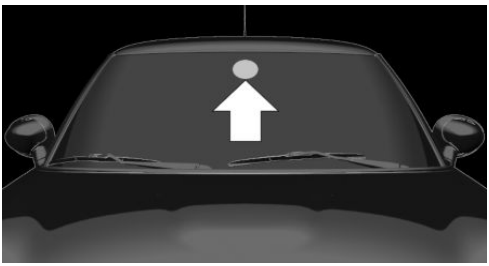
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g., approach control warning with light braking function. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◂

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving-off.

Switching on/off manually

Press button briefly:

▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.

▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Press button again:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.

▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.

▷ The LED goes out.

Setting the warning time

The warning time can be set via the onboard monitor.

1. "Settings"
2. "Frontal Coll. Warning"
3. Activate the desired warning time on the Control Display.

The selected warning time is stored for the profile currently used.

Warning with braking function

Display

If a collision with a recognized vehicle is imminent a warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. You are requested to intervene by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Prewarning

This warning is issued, for example, when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

The driver must intervene actively when there is a prewarning.

Acute warning with braking function

Acute warning in displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

The driver must intervene actively when there is an acute warning. If necessary, the driver is assisted by a minor automatic braking intervention in a possible risk of collision.

Acute warnings can also be triggered without previous forewarning.

Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Premise for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and sufficiently hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: During a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention is executed only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, e.g. by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react incorrectly or not at all due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Observe the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◂

Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus a system reaction might not come or might come late.

E. g. the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the front windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, e. g., from the sun low in the sky.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, the more warnings are displayed. However, there may also be an excess of false warnings.

PERSON WARNING WITH CITY LIGHT BRAKING FUNCTION

The concept

The system can help prevent accidents with pedestrians.

The system issues a warning in the city driving speed area if there is imminent danger of a collision with pedestrians and includes a braking function.

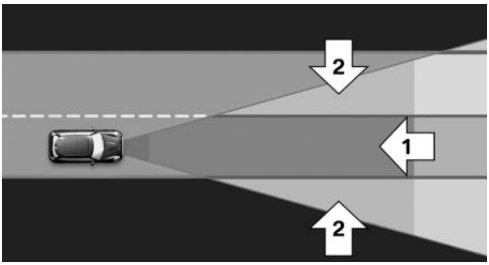
A camera at the base of the rearview mirror controls the system.

General information

With sufficient brightness, the system warns about possible collision danger with pedestrians starting at approx. 6 mph/10 km/h to approx. 35 mph/60 km/h and assists with braking before a collision.

Under those circumstances it reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

▷ Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.

▷ Expanded area, arrow 2, to the right and left.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

Safety information

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve the driver from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

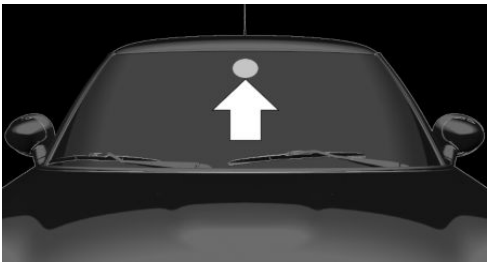
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g., approach control warning with light braking function. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving-off.

Switching on/off manually

Press button briefly:

▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.

▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Press button again:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.

▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.
- ▷ The LED goes out.

Warning with braking function

Display

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Premise for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and sufficiently hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: During a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention is executed only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, e.g. by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react incorrectly or not at all due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Observe the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◂

Detection range

The detection potential of the camera is limited.

Thus a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

E. g. the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Partially covered pedestrians.
- ▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- ▷ Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- ▷ Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 inches/80 cm.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the front windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, e. g., from the sun low in the sky.

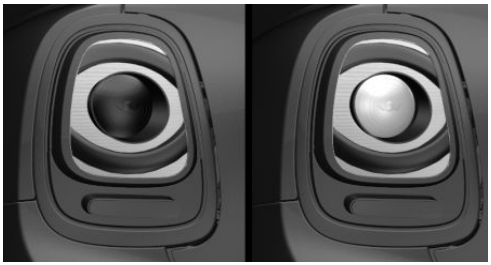
▷ When it is dark outside.

BRAKE FORCE DISPLAY

Concept

The additional brake lamps tell following traffic that an emergency braking procedure is being performed. This helps to reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

General information



▷ During normal brake application, the brake lights light up.

▷ During heavy brake application, the flashers additionally light up.

POST CRASH — IBRAKE

Depressing the brake pedal can cause the vehicle to brake harder. This interrupts automatic braking. Depressing the accelerator pedal also interrupts automatic braking.

Concept

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the vehicle to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically. Secure the vehicle against rolling.

Harder vehicle braking

It can be necessary to bring the vehicle in certain situations to a halt quicker.

Here, a higher braking pressure must be generated for a short period when pressing the brake pedal than during automatic braking. This interrupts automatic braking.

Interrupting automatic braking

It can be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, e.g., for an evasive maneuver.

Interrupt automatic braking:

▷ By pressing the brake pedal.

▷ By pressing the accelerator pedal.

DRIVING STABILITY CONTROL SYSTEMS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle contains its steering power even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

BRAKE ASSISTANT

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the greatest possible braking force boost. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

DSC DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL

The concept

Within the physical limits, the system helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by applying brakes to the individual wheels.

General information

Dynamic Stability Control detect for example the following unstable driving conditions:

- ▷ Fishtailing, which can lead to oversteering.
- ▷ Loss of traction of the front wheel, which can lead to understeering.

Dynamic Traction Control DTC, refer to page 121, is a version of the DSC where forward momentum is optimized.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not release from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

When driving with roof load, e.g., with roof-mounted luggage rack, driving safety may not be ensured in driving-critical situations due to the elevated center of gravity. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with roof load.◀

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has failed.

Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Press and hold this button but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up in the instrument cluster and displays DSC OFF.

DSC is switched off.

Activating DSC

Press button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

Indicator/warning lights

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC is deactivated.

Automatic activation

When DSC is deactivated, automatic activation occurs in the following situations:

- ▷ The vehicle has a flat tire.
- ▷ When activating cruise control in TRACTION or DSC OFF mode.

DTC DYNAMIC TRACTION CONTROL

The concept

DTC is a version of the DSC where forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum headway on special road conditions, for example unplowed snowy roads or loose road surfaces, but with somewhat limited vehicle stability.

When DTC is activated, the vehicle has maximum traction. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

Therefore drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- ▷ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- ▷ When freeing vehicle from deep snow or driving off from loose grounds.
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

Deactivating/activating DTC Dynamic Traction Control

Activating DTC

Press button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up.

Deactivating DTC

Press button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

PERFORMANCE CONTROL

Performance Control enhances the agility of the vehicle.

To increase maneuverability, with a correspondingly sporty driving style, wheels are braked individually.

DYNAMIC DAMPING CONTROL

The concept

The tuning of the suspension can be changed with the system.

Programs

The system offers several different programs.

The programs are selected via the MINI Driving Modes switch, refer to page 122.

MID/GREEN

Balanced tuning of the shock absorbers for more comfort.

SPORT

Consistently sporty tuning of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility.

MINI DRIVING MODES SWITCH

Concept

The MINI Driving Modes switch helps to fine-tune the vehicle's settings and features. Choose between three different programs. The MINI Driving Modes switch will activate the particular program.

Operating the programs

MINI Driving Modes switch	Program
	MID GREEN SPORT

MID

For balanced tuning.

With each starting operation, MID is activated using the Start/Stop button.

GREEN

GREEN, refer to page 173, provides consistent tuning to maximize range.

Activating GREEN

Turn MINI Driving Modes switch to the right until GREEN is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring GREEN

Via MINI Driving Modes switch

1. Activate GREEN.
2. "Configure GREEN"
3. Configure the program.

This configuration is retrieved when GREEN is activated.

Via onboard monitor:

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "GREEN Mode"

or

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure GREEN"

Configure the program.

This configuration is retrieved when GREEN is activated.

SPORT

Consistently sporty tuning of the drivetrain for greater driving agility.

With the appropriate equipment, the tuning of the suspension also changes and SPORT can be individually configured.

The configuration is stored for the profile currently used.

Activating SPORT

Turn MINI Driving Modes switch to the left until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring SPORT

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, when the display is activated on the Control Display, the SPORT driving mode can be configured for individual specifications.

Activate SPORT.

Select "Configure SPORT".

Configure the program.

SPORT can also be configured before it is activated:

1. "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure SPORT"

This configuration is retrieved when SPORT is activated.

Configuring driving program

Settings can be made for the following driving programs in Driving mode:

▷ GREEN, refer to page 122.

▷ SPORT, refer to page 123.

Displays

Program selection

With the MINI Driving Modes switch turned on a list of programs is displayed and can be selected.

Selected program

The instrument cluster displays the selected program.

Display on the onboard monitor

Program changes can be displayed on the onboard monitor.

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Driving mode info"

DRIVE-OFF ASSISTANT

The concept

This system supports driving off on inclines. The parking brake is not required.

Driving off with the drive-off assistant

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

For vehicles with respective equipment versions, the possible holding duration amounts to 2 minutes.

DRIVING COMFORT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

CAMERA-BASED CRUISE CONTROL

The concept

Using this system, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

The system maintains the desired speed on clear roads. For this purpose, the vehicles accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle within the given system limits so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained.

The distance can be adjusted in several steps. For safety reasons, it depends on the repective speed.

General information

A camera on the interior rear view mirror is used to detect vehicles driving ahead.

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

Active cruise control is paused below approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

The system does not brake to a stop.

Depending on the driving settings, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not release from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, e.g., in the following situations:

- ▷ When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- ▷ Suddenly swerving vehicle onto the own lane.
- ▷ When fast approaching standing vehicles.

There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

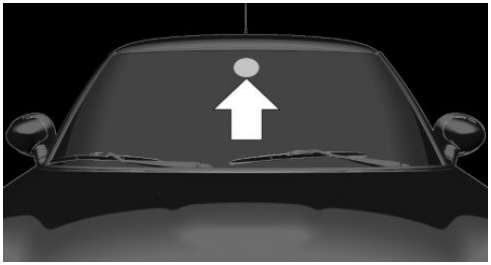
Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Press button	Function
	Cruise control on/off, refer to page 125.
SET	Store/maintain speed, refer to page 126.
RES CNCL	Pause cruise control, refer to page 125. Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 126.
	Reduce distance, refer to page 126.
	Increase distance, refer to page 126.
+	Increase speed, refer to page 126.
–	Reduce speed, refer to page 126.

Buttons are arranged according to vehicle's series, optional features and country specifications.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

Functional requirements

Speed range

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

The max. speed that can be set is 85 mph/140 km/h.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press button on the steering wheel.

Display in the instrument cluster lights up.

Display in the instrument cluster lights up. The current speed is adopted as desired speed and displayed with symbol.

Cruise control is active and maintains the set speed.

DSC will be switched on if needed.

Switching off

Press button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

Press button on the steering wheel.

Automatic interruption

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

▷ When the driver applies the brakes.

- ▷ If the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
- ▷ If selector lever position N is set.
- ▷ When DTC is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ When DSC is actively controlling stability.
- ▷ If the detection range of the camera is impaired, for example, by soiling, heavy precipitation or glare effects from the sun.
- ▷ If the vehicle in front decelerates below a speed of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

Setting the speed

Maintaining/storing the speed

Press ⊞ or ⊟ button in the interrupted state.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the symbol.

DSC will be switched on if needed.

The speed can also be stored as follows:

Press button.

Changing the speed

⊞ or ⊟ button: press until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ ⊞ or ⊟ button: each time it is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷ ⊞ or ⊟ button: each time it is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

⊞ or ⊟ button: hold down to repeat the corresponding action.

Adjusting distance

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not release from the personal responsibility. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.◀

Reduce distance

Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The set distance is briefly displayed in the left part of the instrument cluster.

Increase distance

Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The set distance is briefly displayed in the left part of the instrument cluster.

Continuing cruise control

General information

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.

▷ When the ignition is switched off.

Calling up stored speed and distance

Press button with the system interrupted. Cruise control is continued with the saved values. The selected distance is briefly displayed in the CID (central information display).

Switching distance control on/off

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.◀

Switching distance control off

Press and hold this button.

Or:

Press and hold this button.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

To switch distance control back on, press one of the two buttons again briefly.

After changing over distance control, a Check Control message is displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Desired speed and stored speed

In addition to the indicator lamp, the desired speed is displayed in the central information display.

▷ Display lights up green: system is active, the display indicates the desired speed.

▷ Display lights up orange: system is interrupted, the display indicates the stored speed.

▷ No display: system is switched off.

If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.

Distance to vehicle ahead of you

Selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead is briefly displayed in the left hand portion of the CID (central information display).

Distance display	
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3
	Distance 4 This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.

Detected vehicle

Symbol lights up orange:

A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

Indicator/warning lights

Symbol flashes orange:

The conditions are not adequate for the system to work.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Symbol flashes red and a signal sounds: You are requested to intervene by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

The system has been interrupted or distance control is temporarily suppressed because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was not detected.

Distance control is temporarily suppressed because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was detected.

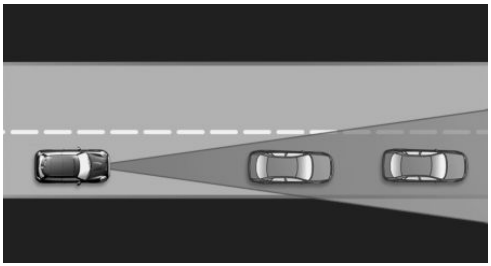
Displays in the Head-up Display

The information from Active Cruise Control can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

Adjusting the Head-up Display, refer to page 93.

System limits

Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

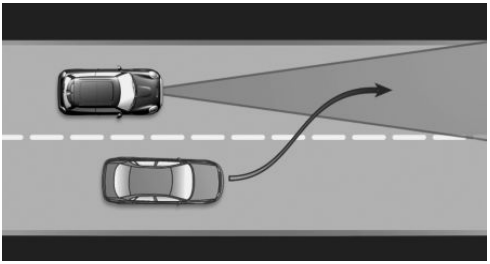
Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.

Deceleration

The system also does not decelerate in the following situations:

- ▷ For pedestrians, cyclists or similarly slow-moving road users.
- ▷ For red traffic lights.
- ▷ For cross traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming traffic.
- ▷ Unlit vehicles or vehicles with nonworking lighting at night.

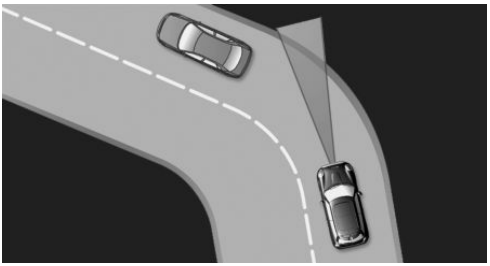
Swerving vehicles



A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. This also applies to major speed differences to vehicles driving ahead of you, for example, when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly, although curves can-

not be anticipated in advance. Therefore, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

In tight curves the system offers only restricted detection where a vehicle ahead of you might be detected late or not at all.

When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the gas pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Weather

In the event of unfavorable weather and light conditions, e. g. if there is rain, snowfall, slush, fog or glare, this may result in poorer recognition of vehicles as well as short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already detected. Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for example by braking, steering or evading.

Engine power

The desired speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if engine power is insufficient.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails or was automatically deactivated.

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ When an object was not correctly detected.
- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the front windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights.
- ▷ Up to 20 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

CRUISE CONTROL

The concept

Using this system, a desired speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the desired speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the driving settings, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not release from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations:

- ▷ On winding roads.
- ▷ In heavy traffic.
- ▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow or rain, or on a loose road surface.

There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.◀

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Press button	Function
	Cruise control on/off, refer to page 130.
SET	Store speed, refer to page 130.
RES CNCL	Pause cruise control, refer to page 130. Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 131.
+	Increase speed, refer to page 130.
–	Reduce speed, refer to page 130.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

55 The current speed is adopted as the desired speed and is displayed with the symbol in the instrument cluster.

Cruise control is active and maintains the set speed.

DSC will be switched on if needed.

Switching off

Press button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

RES CNCL When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

Automatic interruption

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ When the driver applies the brakes.
- ▷ If the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
- ▷ If the gear engaged is too high for the current speed.
- ▷ If selector lever position N is set.
- ▷ When DTC is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ When DSC is actively controlling stability.

Setting the speed

Maintaining/storing the speed

Press ⊞ or ⊟ button in the interrupted state.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed in the instrument cluster.

DSC will be switched on if needed.

The speed can also be stored as follows:

SET Press button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Changing the speed

⊞ or ⊟ button: press until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ ⊞ or ⊟ button: each time it is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷ ⊞ or ⊟ button: each time it is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

  The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- ▷ ⊞ or ⊟ button: pressing it to the resistance point and holding it accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator pedal. After the button is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

General information

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Calling up stored speed

Press button on the steering wheel.

The stored speed is reached and maintained.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Indicator lamp

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster indicates whether the system is switched on.

Desired speed and stored speed

The desired speed is displayed together with the symbol.

- ▷ Display lights up green: system is active, the display indicates the desired speed.
- ▷ Display lights up orange: system is interrupted, the display indicates the stored speed.
- ▷ No display: system is switched off.

If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.

System limits

Engine power

The desired speed is also maintained downhill, but may not be maintained on uphill grades if engine power is insufficient.

PDC PARK DISTANCE CONTROL

The concept

PDC is a support when parking. When you slowly approach an object in the rear - or also in the front of the vehicle if the feature is available - then the object is reported through:

- ▷ Signal tones.
- ▷ Visual display.

General information

The ultrasound sensors for measuring the distances are located in the bumpers.

The maneuvering range, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning is first given in the following situations:

- ▷ By the front middle sensors and the two corner sensors at approx. 24 in/60 cm from the object.
- ▷ By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m from the object.
- ▷ When a collision is imminent.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

Due to high speeds when PDC is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC is not yet active.◀

Overview

With front PDC: button in vehicle

Park assistance button

Ultrasound sensors

Ultrasound sensors of the PDC, for example in the bumpers.

Functional requirements

To ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Do not cover sensors, e.g., with stickers, bicycle racks.
- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically switched on in the following situations:

- ▷ If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

  The rearview camera also switches on.
- ▷ With front PDC: when obstacles are detected behind or in front of the vehicle by PDC and the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

With front PDC: You can switch off automatic activation on obstacle detection:

1. "Settings"
2. "Parking"
3. Select setting.

   Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if needed.

With front PDC: switching on/off manually

Press park assistance button.

▷ On: the LED lights up.

▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed when the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

WARNING

Signal tones

When approaching an object, an intermittent sound indicates the position of the object. E. g. if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 10 inches/25 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

With front PDC: if objects are located both in front of and behind the vehicle, an alternating continuous signal is sounded.

The signal tone is switched off, when selector lever position P is engaged on vehicles with Steptronic transmission.

Volume

The ratio of the PDC signal tone volume to the entertainment volume can be adjusted.

1. "Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. "PDC"
5. To adjust: turn the Controller.
6. To store: press the Controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

A display appears as soon as Park Distance Control (PDC) is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in colors: red, green and yellow.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC:

"Rear view camera"

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react incorrectly or not at all due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Observe the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

- ▷ For small children and animals.
- ▷ For persons with certain clothing, e.g., coats.
- ▷ With external interference of the ultrasound, e.g., from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- ▷ If cargo protrudes.
- ▷ Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With moving objects.
- ▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- ▷ With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- ▷ With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- ▷ For objects with porous surfaces.
- ▷ Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

False warnings

The system may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- ▷ In heavy rain.
- ▷ When sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- ▷ When sensors are covered in snow.
- ▷ On rough road surfaces.
- ▷ On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- ▷ In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, e.g., in underground garages.
- ▷ In automatic vehicle washes.
- ▷ Due to heavy exhaust.
- ▷ Due to other ultrasound sources, e.g., sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

  The malfunction is signaled by a continuous tone alternating between the front and rear speakers. As soon as the malfunction due to other ultrasound sources is no longer present, the system is again fully functional.

With front PDC: to reduce false alarms, switch off automatic PDC activation on obstacle detection, e.g., in vehicle washes, refer to page 132.

Malfunction

A Check Control message, refer to page 80, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Red symbol is displayed, and the range of the sensors is dimmed on the Control Display.

PDC has failed. Have the system checked.

REARVIEW CAMERA

Concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

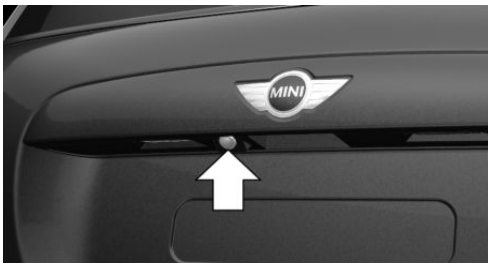
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle of the tailgate.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt. Clean the camera lens if necessary.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically switched on if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if needed.

Switching on/off manually

Press park assistance button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The PDC is shown on the Control Display.

The rearview camera image is displayed when the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

Switching the view via the onboard monitor

With PDC activated:

"Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

Display on the Control Display

Functional requirement

- ▷ The rearview camera is switched on.
- ▷ The tailgate is fully closed.
- ▷ Keep the recording range of the camera clear. Protruding cargo or carrier systems and trailers that are not connected to a trailer power socket can lead to malfunctions.

Activating the assistance functions

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

- ▷ Parking aid lines

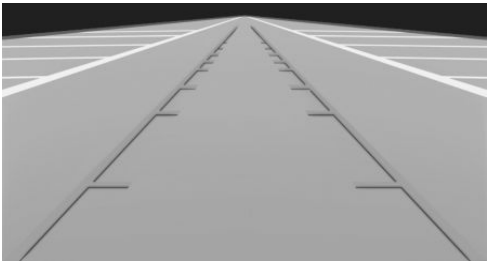
  "Parking aid lines"

  Lanes and turning radius are indicated.
- ▷ Obstacle marking

  "Obstacle marking"

  Spatially-shaped markings are displayed.

Pathway lines

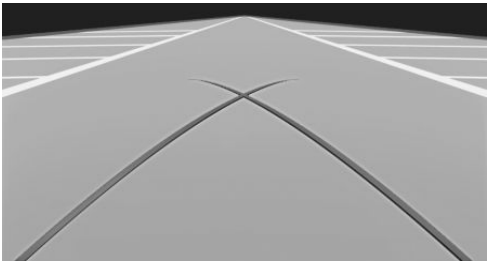


Pathway lines can be superimposed on the image of the rearview camera.

Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the current steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning circle lines

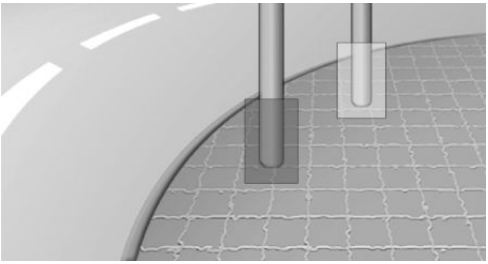


Turning circle lines can be superimposed on the image of the rearview camera.

Turning circle lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Obstacle marking

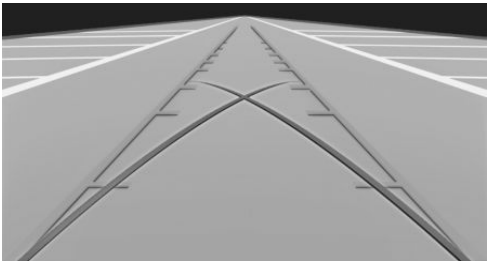


Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

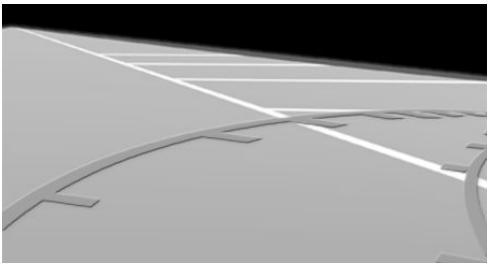
Their colored margins of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the turning radius lines lead to within the limits of the parking space.



2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.



Display settings

Brightness

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. ☼ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

Contrast

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. ◐ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

System limits

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles or high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be recognized by the system.

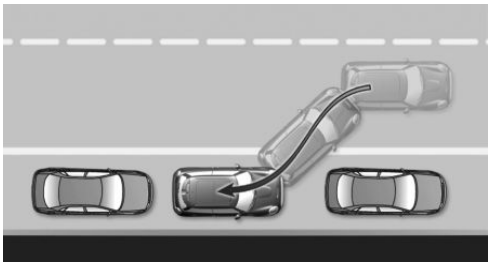
Assistance functions also take into account data of the PDC.

Follow instructions in the PDC chapter, refer to page 131.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Therefore, do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

PARKING ASSISTANT

Concept



This system assists the driver in parking parallel to the road.

General information

Parking assistant handling is divided into three steps:

▷ Switching on and activating.

▷ Parking space search.

▷ Parking.

System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the Control Display.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of steering during the parking procedure.

A component of the parking assistant is the PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 131.

Safety information

A component of the parking assistant is the PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 131.

⚠ WARNING

The system does not release from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

⚠ NOTE

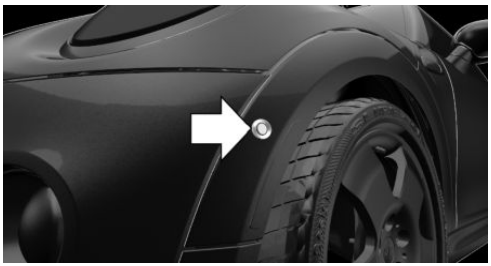
The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of property damage. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Ultrasound sensors



The ultrasound sensors for measuring parking spaces are located on the wheel housing.

Functional requirements

Ultrasound sensors

To ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Do not cover sensors, e.g., with stickers.
- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

For measuring parking spaces

- ▷ Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- ▷ Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

- ▷ Gaps behind an object that has a min. length of 5 ft/1.5 m.
- ▷ Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.
- ▷ Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 3.3 ft/1.0 m.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

For parking

- ▷ Doors and tailgate are closed.
- ▷ The parking brake is released.
- ▷ When parking in parking spaces on the driver's side, the corresponding turn signal must be set.

Switching on and activating

Switching on with the button

Press park assistance button.

The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

Switching on with reverse gear

Shift into reverse.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

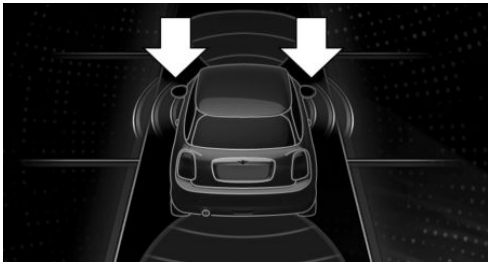
To activate: "Parking Assistant"

Indicator on the Control Display

System activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	The system is activated.

Parking space search and system status



▷ Colored symbols, see arrows, on the side of the vehicle illustrated. Parking assistant is activated and search for parking space active.

▷ Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When the parking assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted.

▷ The parking procedure is active. Steering control has been taken over by system.

▷ Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

Parking using the parking assistant

Parking

1. Press park assistance button or shift into reverse gear to switch the parking assistant on, refer to page 138. Activate the parking assistant, if needed.

   Parking assistant is activated.

2. Pass the row of parked vehicles at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and at a distance of maximum 5 ft/1.5 m.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the display, refer to page 139.

3. Follow the instructions on the display.

   The best possible parking position will come after gear change on the stationary vehicle - wait for the automatic steering wheel move.

   The end of the parking procedure is indicated on the display.

4. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

▷ Press park assistance button.

▷ "Parking Assistant"

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

▷ If the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.

▷ If a gear is selected that does not match the instruction on the display.

▷ If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.

- Possible on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- If a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- If the Park Distance Control PDC displays clearances that are too small.
- When switching into other functions of the radio.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resuming

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued, if needed.

Reactivate the parking assistant, refer to page 138, and follow the instructions on the display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off as follows:

- Press park assistance button.
- Switching off the ignition.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react incorrectly or not at all due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Observe the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- With a mounted emergency wheel.
- With ditches or edges, for example an edge of a port.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, e.g., coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, e.g., from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- If cargo protrudes.
- Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.
- The parking assistant may identify parking spaces that are not suitable for parking.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Tire size

The parking position may vary depending on the tire size.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked.

CLIMATE CONTROL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

AIR CONDITIONER

1 Air distribution settings
2 Air flow
3 Temperature
4 Seat heating, right 52
5 Air conditioning
6 Recirculated-air mode
7 Rear window defroster
8 Windshield defroster
9 Seat heating, left 52

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Climate control functions in detail

Switching the system on/off

Switching on

Set any air volume.

Switching off

Turn wheel for air quantity to the left until the control switches off.

Temperature

Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

Air conditioning

The air in the vehicle's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The vehicle's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.

Press button.

Air conditioning is switched on or off.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The air conditioner produces condensation water, refer to page 166, that will exit from below the vehicle.

Recirculated-air mode

You may respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

To prevent window condensation, recirculated air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the external temperature.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

If the windows fog over, switch off recirculated-air mode and increase the air flow, if needed.

Air flow, manual

Turn the ring to set the desired air volume.

The higher the rate, the more effective the heating or cooling will be.

The air flow from the air conditioner may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Manual air distribution

Turn the wheel to select the desired program or the desired intermediate setting.

- ▷ Windows.
- ▷ Upper body region.
- ▷ Floor area.
- ▷ Windows, upper body region, and floor area.

Defrosts windows and removes condensation

Direct the air distribution toward windows, increase the air flow and temperature, and, if needed, use the cooling function.

Windshield defroster

Press button.

The front window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Rear window defroster

Press button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

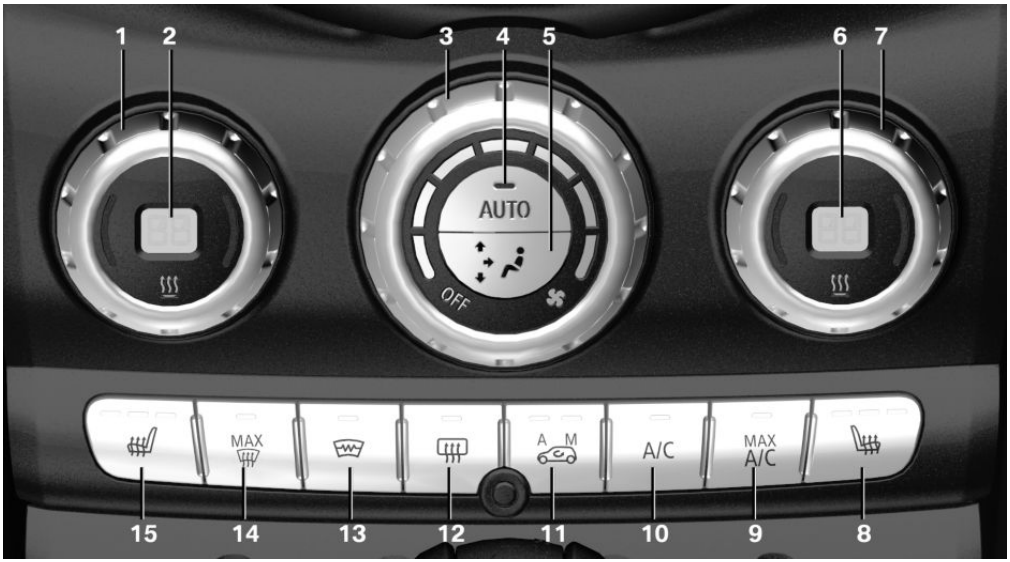
When GREEN Mode, refer to page 173, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Microfilter

In external and recirculated air mode the microfilter filters dust and pollen from the air.

This filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance, refer to page 213, of your vehicle.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



1 Temperature, left
2 Display
3 Air flow, AUTO intensity
4 AUTO program
5 Air distribution, manual
6 Display
7 Temperature, right
8 Seat heating, right 52

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

9 Maximum cooling
10 Air conditioning
11 Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode
12 Rear window defroster
13 Windshield defroster
14 Defrosting windows and removing condensation
15 Seat heating, left 52

Climate control functions in detail

Switching the system on/off

Switching on

Set any air volume.

Switching off

Turn wheel for air quantity to the left until the control switches off.

Temperature

Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control reaches this temperature as quickly as possible, if needed by increasing the cooling or heating output, and then keeps it constant.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Cooling function

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.

Press button.

Air conditioning is switched on or off.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 166, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling

Press button.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and air circulation mode.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

The function is available with external temperatures beyond approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the engine running.

Adjust air flow with the program active.

AUTO program

Press button.

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

The cooling function, refer to page 145, and the automatic recirculation control, refer to

page 146, are automatically also switched on in the AUTO program.

To switch off the program: press the button again or manually adjust the air distribution.

Intensity of the AUTO program

With the AUTO program activated, the automatic intensity control can be changed.

Turn the ring to set the desired intensity from soft to intensive.

The set intensity is displayed via the position of the illuminated LED segment.

Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- ▷ LEDs off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Left LED on, automatic recirculated-air control: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off automatically.
- ▷ Right LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

To prevent window condensation, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the external temperature.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the vehicle's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

If windows are fogged over, switch off the recirculating mode and press the AUTO button. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Air flow, manual

To manually adjust air flow turn off AUTO program first.

Turn the ring to set the desired air volume.

The manually adjusted air flow is displayed via illuminated LED segments.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Manual air distribution

Press button repeatedly to select a program:

- ▷ Upper body region.
- ▷ Upper body region and floor area.
- ▷ Floor area.
- ▷ Windows and floor area.
- ▷ Windows, upper body region, and floor area.
- ▷ Windows and upper body region.
- ▷ Windows.

Defrosts windows and removes condensation

Press button.

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Adjust air flow with the program active.

If the windows fog over, also switch on the cooling function or press the AUTO button.

Windshield defroster

Press button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

The front window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Rear window defroster

Press button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

When GREEN Mode, refer to page 173, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

In external and recirculated air mode the microfilter/activated charcoal filter filters dust, pollen, and gaseous pollutants out of the air.

This filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance, refer to page 213, of your vehicle.

VENTILATION

Setting

The air flow directions can be individually adjusted:

- ▷ Direct ventilation:

  The air flow is directly pointed onto the person. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.
- ▷ Indirect ventilation:

  If the vents are fully or partly closed, the air is directly routed into the car's interior.

Front ventilation

- ▷ Turn knob for continuous opening and closing of the vents.
- ▷ Swivel the vents to alter the direction of the vent flow, arrow.

PARKED-CAR VENTILATION

The concept

The parked-car ventilation ventilates the vehicle interior and lowers its temperature, if needed.

The system can be switched on and off at any external temperature, either directly or by using two preset activation times. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

On the Control Display:

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate comf. ventilation"

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes if the system is switched on.

Preselecting the switch-on time

On the Control Display:

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Climate"

3. "Timer 1:" or "Timer 2:"
4. Set the desired time.

Activating the activation time

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate timer 1" or "Activate timer 2"

The symbol on the automatic climate control lights up when the switch-on time is activated.

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes when the system has been switched on.

The system will only be switched on within the next 24 hours. After that, it needs to be reactivated.

INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

UNIVERSAL INTEGRATED REMOTE CONTROL

The concept

The Universal Integrated Remote Control can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives or lighting systems. The Universal Integrated Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior rearview mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, e.g., the garage door, using the integrated universal remote control. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.◀

Compatibility

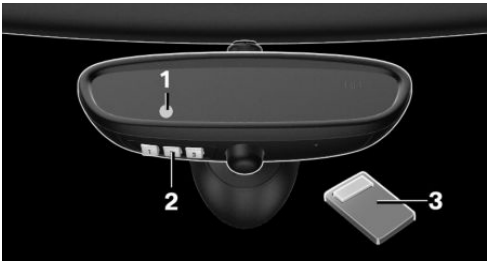
If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the instructions of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the Universal Integrated Remote Control.

If you have any questions, please contact:

- ▷ A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Overview



1 LED

2 Programmable keys

3 Hand-held transmitters of the system

Programming

General information

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Initial setup:

   Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously

for approximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior rearview mirror flashes. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior rearview mirror.

3. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 inches/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.
4. Simultaneously press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter and the button to be programmed on the interior rearview mirror. The LED on the interior rearview mirror will begin flashing slowly.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed.

   If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance between the interior rearview mirror and the hand-held transmitter and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

The systems can be controlled using the interior rearview mirror buttons.

Special feature of the alternating-code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features an alternating-code radio system.

Read the system's operating manual, or press the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror longer. If the LED on the interior mirror starts flashing rapidly and then stays lit constantly for 2 seconds, the system features an alternating-code radio system. Flashing and continuous illumination of the LED will repeat for approximately 20 seconds.

For systems with an alternating-code radio system, the universal remote control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the operating manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior rearview mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the interior rearview mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the interior rearview mirror LED starts flashing slowly, hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 inches/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

4. Likewise, press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the interior rearview mirror LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed. The system can then be controlled by the button on the interior rearview mirror.

   If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

Controls

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, e.g., the garage door, using the integrated universal remote control. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.◂

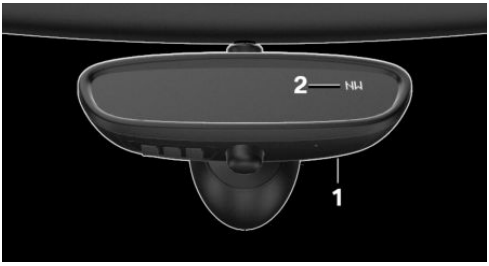
The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior rearview mirror while the engine is running or when the ignition is started. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior rearview mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting stored functions

Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED flashes rapidly. All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

DIGITAL COMPASS

Overview



1 Control button
2 Mirror display

Mirror display

The point of the compass is displayed in the mirror when driving straight.

Operating concept

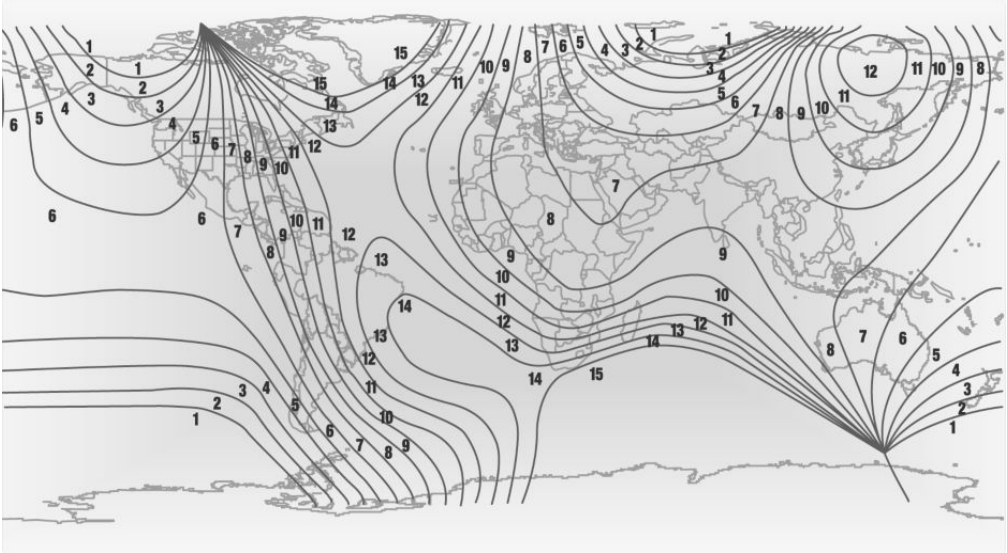
Various functions can be called up by pressing the control button with a pointed object, such as the tip of a ballpoint pen or similar object. The following setting options are displayed in succession, depending on how long the control button is pressed:

- ▷ Pressed briefly: turns display on/off.
- ▷ 3 to 6 seconds: compass zone setting.
- ▷ 6 to 9 seconds: compass calibration.
- ▷ 9 to 12 seconds: left/right-hand steering setting.
- ▷ 12 to 15 seconds: language setting.

Setting the compass zones

Sets the particular compass zones on the vehicle so that the compass operates correctly; refer to World map with compass zones.

World map with magnetic zones



Procedure

1. Press and hold the control button for approx. 3 to 4 seconds. The number of the set compass zone appears in the mirror.
2. To change the zone setting, press the control button quickly and repeatedly until the number of the compass zone that corresponds with your location appears in the mirror.

The set zone is stored automatically. The compass is ready for use again after approximately 10 seconds.

Calibrating the digital compass

The digital compass must be calibrated in the event of the following:

- ▷ The wrong compass point is displayed.
- ▷ The point of the compass displayed does not change despite changing the direction of travel.
- ▷ Not all points of the compass are displayed.

Procedure

1. Make sure that there are no large metallic objects or overhead power lines near the vehicle and that there is sufficient room to drive around in a circle.
2. Set the currently applicable compass zone.
3. Press and hold the control button for approx. 6 to 7 seconds so that "C" appears on the display. Next, drive in a complete circle at least once at a speed of no more than 4 mph/7 km/h. If calibration is successful, the "C" is replaced by the points of the compass.

Left/right-hand steering

The digital compass is already set for right or left-hand steering at the factory.

Setting the language

Press and hold the control button for approx. 12 to 13 seconds. Briefly press the control button again to switch between English "E" and German "O".

Settings are stored automatically after approximately 10 seconds.

SUN VISOR

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover.

When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

ASHTRAY/CIGARETTE LIGHTER

Overview

The ashtray is located in one of the frontal cup holders, the cigarette lighter above it in the center console.

Ashtray

In order to empty the ashtray, remove the ashtray from the cupholder.

Lighter

WARNING

Contact with hot heating elements or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against the respective objects. There is a risk of fire and injuries. Hold the cigarette lighter by its handle. Make sure that children do not use the cigarette lighter and do not burn themselves, e.g., by carrying the remote control with you when exiting the vehicle.◀

NOTE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of property damage. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.◀

Push in the lighter.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

SOCKETS

General information

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment when operating and drive-ready state are activated.

Sockets can be used for the running electrical devices with the engine running or with the ignition switched on. The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

Safety information

WARNING

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, for example portable navigation devices, etc., can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior when unfolding. There is risk of injuries. make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.◀

NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.◀

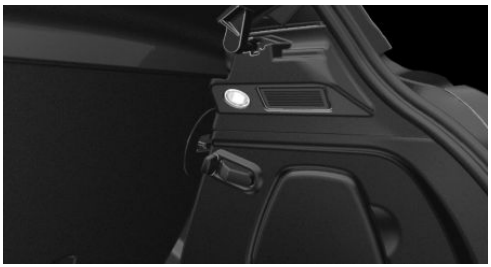
NOTE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of property damage. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.◀

In the center console

Remove the cover or cigarette lighter.

In the cargo area



The socket is located on the right side in the cargo area.

USB INTERFACE/AUX-IN PORT

The concept

Mobile devices with USB port can be connected to the USB interface.

A mobile audio device, e.g. a MP3 player, can be connected using the AUX-IN port.

General information

The following devices can be connected:

- ▷ Mobile phones supported by the USB interface.
- ▷ Audio devices with USB port, for example MP3 player.
- ▷ USB storage devices.

  Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

Information about compatible USB devices can be found at www.miniusa.com/bluetooth.

The following applications are possible:

- ▷ Exporting and importing profiles, refer to page 41.
- ▷ Playing music files via USB audio.
- ▷ Adding music files to the music collection and saving the music collection.
- ▷ Playing video films via USB video.
- ▷ Loading of software updates.

Overview

The USB interface is located in the front of the center console.

Connecting an external device

Observe the following when connecting:

- ▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
- ▷ Use a flexible adapter cable.
- ▷ Protect the USB storage device against mechanical damage.
- ▷ Due to the large number of USB media available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- ▷ Do not expose USB media to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the device owner's manual.
- ▷ Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB storage device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- ▷ A connected USB storage device will be supplied with charging current via the USB interface if the device supports this.
- ▷ To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB storage device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB interface.
- ▷ Depending on how the USB storage device should be used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the device owner's manual.

Not compatible USB media:

- ▷ USB hard drives.
- ▷ USB hubs.
- ▷ USB memory card readers with multiple inserts.
- ▷ HFS-formatted USB media.
- ▷ MTP devices.
- ▷ Devices such as fans or lights.

CARGO AREA

Cargo cover

General information

When the tailgate is opened, the cargo cover is raised.

Safety information

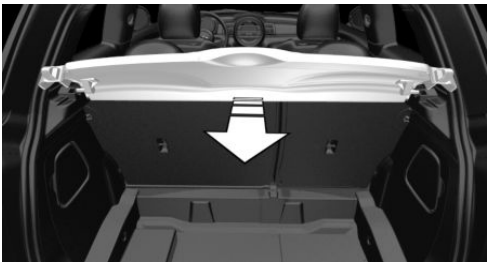
WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, e.g., mobile phones, can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the vehicle's interior.◀

Removing

For storing bulky objects the cargo cover can be removed.

1. Detach the left and right retaining straps at the tailgate.
2. Pull the cargo cover out of the brackets on the left and right.



Installing

1. Slide the cargo cover forward horizontally into the two side brackets until it audibly engages.
2. Attach the left and right retaining straps at the tailgate.

Enlarging the cargo area

The concept

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrest.

The rear seat backrest is divided into two parts at a ratio of 60 to 40. The backrest of the left seat is connected to the backrest center section.

The sides can be folded down separately or together.

Safety information

WARNING

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.◀

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◀

WARNING

With an unlocked backrest, an unsecured load can be thrown into the vehicle's interior, e.g., in case of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the backrest engages into the locking after folding it back.◀

WARNING

With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective function of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear backrest.◀

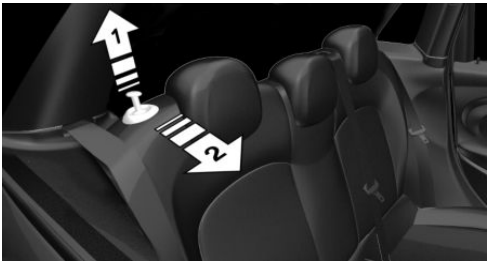
WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.◀

Folding down rear seat backrests

The rear seat backrest can be folded down from the front or from the cargo area.

Before the rear seat backrest is folded down, hook the corresponding safety belt into the belt buckle on the side.



1. Pull the release upward to release the rear seat backrest.
2. Fold the rear seat backrest forward.

Folding back the backrest

WARNING

With an unlocked backrest, an unsecured load can be thrown into the vehicle's interior, e.g., in case of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the backrest engages into the locking after folding it back.◀

Fold up the backrest and press it into the latch. Make sure that the safety belt is not pinched.

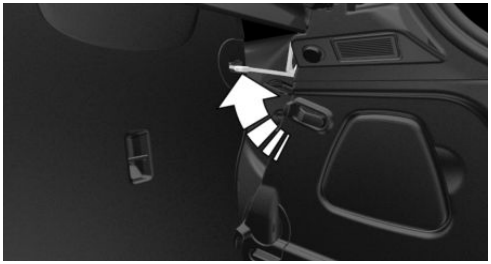
Adjusting the backrest tilt

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◀

To transport bulky items, the trunk can be expanded by setting the backrests at a steeper angle.

1. Release the backrest, and tilt it forward.
2. Fold the frame up until it engages.



3. Fold back and engage the rear seat backrest.

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

SAFETY INFORMATION

WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, e.g., mobile phones, can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the vehicle's interior.◀

NOTE

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use anti-slip pads.◀

OVERVIEW

The following storage compartments are available in the vehicle interior:

- ▷ Storage compartment in front of the cup holders.
- ▷ Storage tray in the center console.
- ▷ Glove compartment on the front passenger side.
- ▷ Storage compartment in the center armrest.
- ▷ Compartments in the doors.
- ▷ Pockets on the backrests of the front seats.

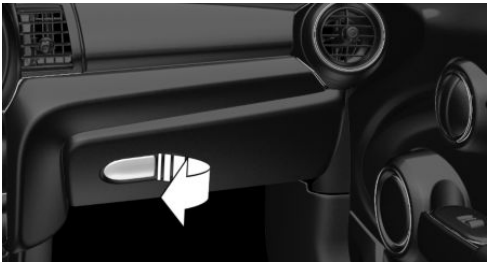
GLOVE COMPARTMENT

Safety information

WARNING

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the vehicle's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.◀

Opening



Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing

Fold up the cover.

COMPARTMENTS IN THE DOORS

WARNING

Breakable objects, e.g., glass bottles, can break in the event of an accident. Broken glass can be scattered in the vehicle's interior. There is a risk of injury. Do not stow any breakable objects in the vehicle's interior.◂

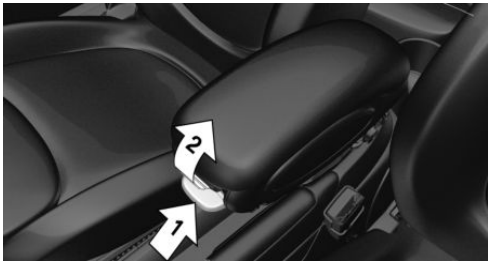
CENTER ARMREST

The center armrest contains a storage compartment.

Opening

Press button, arrow 1, and open center arm rest upward, arrow 2.

Adjusting the height



Press button, arrow 1, and swing center arm rest upward or downward into the desired height, arrow 2.

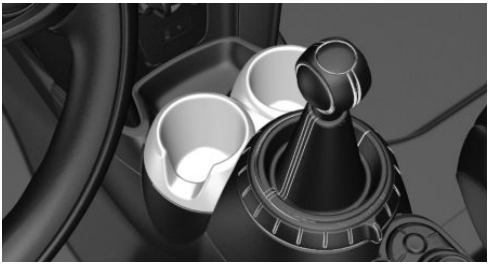
CUP HOLDERS

Safety information

WARNING

Unsuitable containers in the cup holder and hot beverages can damage the cup holder and increase the risk of injury in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Use light-weight, unbreakable, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages. Do not force objects into the cup holder.◂

Front



In the center console.

Rear

For 3-door models: in front of the rear seats and in the side armrests.

For 5-door models: in front of the rear seats.

CLOTHES HOOKS

WARNING

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of an accident. When suspending clothing articles from the hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.◀

WARNING

Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects, e.g., clothing articles, from the clothes hooks.◀

The clothes hooks are located above the side windows in the rear.

The clothes hooks are located above the rear doors.

STORAGE SPACE UNDER CARGO FLOOR PANEL

Located under the cargo floor panel on the right side is a trough for the onboard vehicle tool kit.

To remove the onboard vehicle tool kit, fold the right side of the cargo floor panel upward.

VARIABLE TRUNK FLOOR

With the variable trunk floor, the trunk can be configured corresponding to transport requirements. To do this, remove the trunk floor, and insert it in the desired position.

Follow instructions on securing cargo, refer to page 168.

Removing the cargo floor panel

On 5-door models: To change the position of the cargo floor panel, first fold up the rear part of the cargo floor panel.

Grasp the cargo floor panel in the rear and fold slightly upward. Next, pull it backward from the supports.

The cargo floor panel can be removed from the trunk above the tail lamps.

Lower position

- ▷ Larger objects can be transported.
- ▷ Space for smaller objects remains between the fixed and variable trunk floor.

Folded up position

WARNING

Improper use of the variable cargo floor panel can lead to a danger of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries and risk of property damage.

- ▷ Do not use the variable cargo floor panel to separate the cargo area and vehicle interior in the sense of a partition net.
- ▷ Only use the variable cargo floor in the folded-up position when the backrests are folded up and locked.
- ▷ Always secure cargo against shifting, using straps, belts and lashing eyes, for example.◀

Fold up the cargo floor panel in the lower position and push it behind the locks, arrow.

You've reached the maximum cargo height.

Upper position

- ▷ With the backrests folded down, a long, flat loading surface is produced.
- ▷ For 3-door models:

  Maximum load in this position:
  330 lbs/150 kg.
- ▷ For 5-door models:

  Maximum load in this position:
  441 lbs/200 kg.
- ▷ Space for objects remains between the fixed and variable trunk floor.

DRIVE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

THINGS TO REMEMBER WHEN DRIVING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

BREAKING-IN PERIOD

General information

Moving parts need time to adjust to one another (break-in time).

The following instructions will help accomplish a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control, refer to page 77.

Safety information

WARNING

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of an accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.◀

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

▷ For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimal performance between brake discs and brake pads. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

The same break-in procedures should be observed if any of the components above-mentioned have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

GENERAL DRIVING NOTES

Closing the tailgate

WARNING

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Do not drive with the tailgate open.◀

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- ▷ Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- ▷ Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust system

WARNING

During driving operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, e.g., caused by the exhaust gas system. If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking. Do not touch the hot exhaust system.◀

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

WARNING

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. If possible, in the vehicle's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual interference and deflect the radiation from the vehicle's interior.◀

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

NOTE

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of property damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.◀

When driving through water, observe the following:

- ▷ Drive through calm water only.
- ▷ Drive through water only if it is not deeper than maximum 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- ▷ Drive through water no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Braking safely

Your vehicle is equipped with ABS as a standard feature.

Perform an emergency stop in situations that require such.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

Objects in the area around the pedals

WARNING

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, e.g., for cleaning.◀

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, press brake pedal ever so gently every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated when braking helps to dry the brake discs and pads and protect them from corrosion.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

WARNING

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is a risk of an accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.◀

WARNING

In idle state or with the engine switched off, safety-relevant functions, e.g., engine braking effect, braking force boost and steering assistance, are restricted or not available at all. There is a risk of an accident. Do not drive in idle state or with the engine switched off.◀

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking efforts. Otherwise the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are furthered by the following circumstances:

- ▷ Low mileage.
- ▷ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- ▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.
- ▷ Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops collecting underneath the vehicle.

Ground clearance

NOTE

If ground clearance is insufficient, there might be contact with the front or rear spoiler, e.g., when driving over curbs or entering into underground vehicle parking garages. There is a risk of property damage. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available.◀

DRIVING ON RACETRACKS

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty. The vehicle is not designed for motorsports competitive use.

LOADING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

SAFETY INFORMATION

WARNING

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them, and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. There is a risk of an accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.◀

WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, e.g., mobile phones, can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the vehicle's interior.◀

WARNING

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the vehicle's interior, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.◀

NOTE

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.◀

DETERMINING THE LOAD LIMIT

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard:

   The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and unstable driving situations may result.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

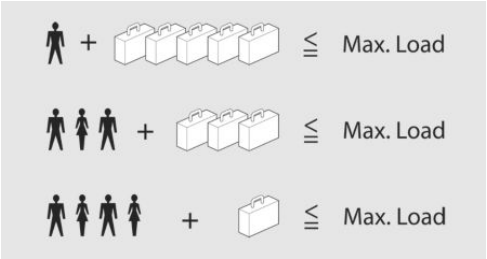
   E.g., if the YYY amount equals 1,000 lbs and there will be four 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo

and luggage load capacity is 400 lbs: 1,000 lbs minus 600 lbs = 400 lbs.

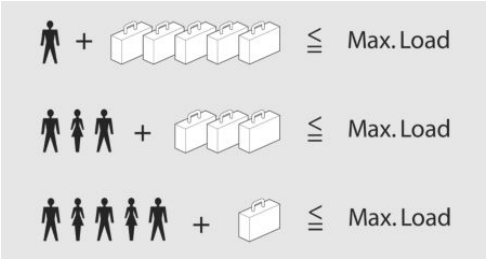
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

LOAD

On 3-door models



On 5-door models



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

STOWING AND SECURING CARGO

- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- ▷ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- ▷ Very heavy cargo: when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- ▷ If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow cargo.
- ▷ Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.
- ▷ Small and light cargo: secure with ratchet straps or draw straps.
- ▷ Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

Attach the cargo straps, ratchet straps or draw straps to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

LASHING EYES IN THE CARGO AREA

Without storage compartment package: to secure the cargo there are two lashing eyes, arrow 1, in the cargo area.

With storage compartment package: to secure the cargo there are six lashing eyes, arrows 1 and 2, in the cargo area.

ROOF-MOUNTED LUGGAGE RACK

Safety information

Installation only possible with roof rack.

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

Securing

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- ▷ Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- ▷ Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- ▷ The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- ▷ Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- ▷ Secure the roof luggage firmly, e.g., using ratchet straps.
- ▷ Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.
- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

REAR LUGGAGE RACK

General information

Installation only possible with rear luggage rack preparation.

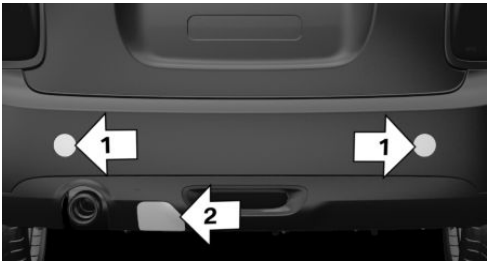
Rear racks are available as special accessories.

Follow the installation instructions of the rear luggage rack.

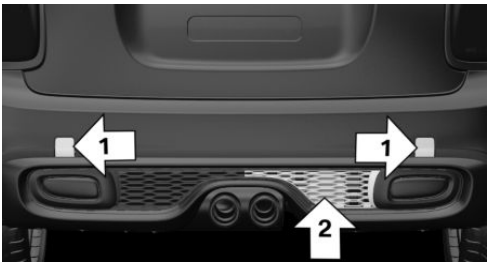
Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Securing

COOPER



COOPER S



The anchorage points, arrow 1, and the socket, arrow 2, are located below the covers in the bumper.

Remove the covers before installing the rear luggage rack.

Power consumption

Before starting to drive, check the function of the rear luggage rack lights.

The rear luggage rack lights must not consume more than:

- ▷ Turn signals: 42 watts per side.
- ▷ Rear lights: 50 watts per side.
- ▷ Brake lights: 84 watts in total.
- ▷ Rear fog lights: 42 watts in total.
- ▷ Backup lamp: 42 watts in total.

SAVING FUEL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

The vehicle features advanced technology for the reduction of fuel consumption and emissions.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

The implementation of certain measures, driving style and regular maintenance can influence fuel consumption and environmental impact.

REMOVE UNNECESSARY CARGO

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

REMOVE ATTACHED PARTS FOLLOWING USE

Remove roof-mounted or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

CLOSE THE WINDOWS AND GLASS SUNROOF

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

TIRES

General information

Tires can affect fuel consumption in various ways, for example, tire size may influence fuel consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

DRIVE AWAY WITHOUT DELAY

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

LOOK WELL AHEAD WHEN DRIVING

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

AVOID HIGH ENGINE SPEEDS

As a rule: driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

Use 1st gear to get the vehicle moving. Starting with the 2nd gear, accelerate rapidly. When accelerating, shift up before reaching high engine speeds.

When you reach the desired speed, shift into the highest applicable gear and drive with the engine speed as low as possible and at a constant speed.

The gear shift indicator, refer to page 86, of your vehicle indicates the most fuel efficient gear.

USE COASTING CONDITIONS

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

SWITCH OFF THE ENGINE DURING LONGER STOPS

Switch off the engine during longer stops, e.g., at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

SWITCH OFF ANY FUNCTIONS THAT ARE NOT CURRENTLY NEEDED

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and consume additional fuel, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Therefore, switch off these functions if they are not actually needed.

HAVE MAINTENANCE CARRIED OUT

Have vehicles maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. MINI recommends that maintenance work be performed by a MINI service center.

Also note the MINI maintenance systems, refer to page 213.

GREEN MODE

Concept

GREEN Mode supports a driving style that saves on fuel consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, e.g., the climate control output, are adjusted.

For Steptronic transmission:

The coasting driving condition is enabled under certain conditions.

Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in selector lever position D. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged. An indicator provides information about the distance traveled in coasting mode.

In addition, context-sensitive instructions are displayed to assist with an optimized fuel consumption driving style.

The achieved extended range is displayed in the instrument cluster.

General information

The system includes the following MINIMALISM functions and MINIMALISM displays:

- ▷ GREEN bonus range, refer to page 175.
- ▷ GREEN tips driving instruction, refer to page 175.
- ▷ GREEN climate control, refer to page 174.
- ▷ MINIMALISM analyzer, refer to page 177.
- ▷ Coasting driving condition, refer to page 176.

Activating GREEN Mode

Turn MINI Driving Modes switch to the right until GREEN Mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring GREEN Mode

Via MINI Driving Modes switch

1. Activating GREEN Mode.
2. "Configure GREEN"
3. Configure the program.

Via onboard monitor:

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "GREEN Mode"

Or

1. ⚙ "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure GREEN"

Configure the program.

GREEN Limit

- ▷ Setting the speed for the GREEN Limit:

  "Tip at:"

  Select the desired speed.
- ▷ "GREEN speed warning":

  A GREEN tip is displayed if the speed of the set GREEN Limit is exceeded.

Coasting

Fuel-efficiency can be optimized by disengaging the engine and coasting, refer to page 176, with the engine idling.

This function is only available in GREEN Mode.

Deactivate the function if you wish to utilize the engine braking effect when driving downhill.

GREEN climate control

"GREEN climate control"

Climate control is set to be fuel-efficient.

By making a slight change to the set temperature, or adjusting the rate of heating or cooling of the vehicle's interior fuel consumption can be economized.

The outputs of the seat heater and the exterior Additionally heat output to seats and exterior mirror is reduced.

Exterior mirror heat is available when outside temperatures are very low.

GREEN potential savings

The percentage of potential savings that can be achieved with the current configuration is displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Display in the instrument cluster

GREEN bonus range

An adjusted driving style helps you extend your driving range.

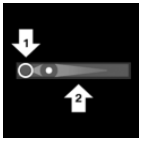
This may be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

The bonus range is shown in the range display.

The bonus range is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.

- ▷ Green display: efficient driving style.
- ▷ Gray display: adjust driving style, e.g., by backing off the accelerator pedal.

Driving style



A bar display in the instrument cluster indicates your current driving efficiency.

Mark in the left area, arrow 1: display for energy recovered by coasting or when braking.

Mark in the right area, arrow 2: display when accelerating.

The efficiency of your driving style is shown by the position of the mark:

- ▷ Mark inside the green range: efficient driving style.
- ▷ Mark outside the green range: adjust driving style, for example by backing off the accelerator.

GREEN tip driving instruction

The GREEN tip indicates that the driving style can be adjusted to be more fuel efficient, for example by backing off the accelerator.

Activating the driving style indicator and GREEN tips

The driving style indicator and GREEN tips are shown in the instrument cluster when the GREEN Mode display is activated.

To activate the driving style indicator and GREEN tips:

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "GREEN Info"

GREEN tip symbols

An additional symbol and text instructions are displayed.

Symbol	Measure
	For efficient driving back off the accelerator or delay accelerating to allow time to assess road conditions.
km/h	Reduce speed to the selected GREEN speed.
D	Steptronic transmission: switch from M/S to D or avoid manual shift interventions.

Symbol	Measure
	Manual transmission: follow shifting instructions.
	Manual transmission: engage neutral for engine stop.

Indications on the Control Display

MINIMALISM

Information on fuel consumption and technology can be displayed while driving.

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "MINIMALISM"

Displaying MINIMALISM info

The current efficiency can be displayed.

"MINIMALISM info"

The following systems are displayed:

- ▷ Auto Start/Stop function.
- ▷ Energy recovery.
- ▷ Climate control output.
- ▷ Coasting.

Displaying GREEN tips

"GREEN tips"

Driving instruction and an additional symbol are displayed.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Coasting

The concept

The system helps to conserve fuel.

To do this, under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission when selector lever position D is set. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

This driving condition is referred to as coasting.

As soon as the brake or accelerator pedal is depressed, the engine is automatically coupled to the transmission again.

General information

Coasting is a component of the GREEN driving mode, refer to page 173.

Coasting is automatically activated when GREEN Mode is called via the MINI Driving Modes switch, refer to page 122.

The function is available in a certain speed range.

A proactive driving style helps the driver to use the function as often as possible and supports the fuel-conserving effect of coasting.

Functional requirements

In GREEN Mode, this function is available in a speed range from approx. 30 mph/50 km/h to 100 mph/160 km/h if the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not operated.
- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Engine and transmission are at operating temperature.

Operation via the shift paddles

Concept

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the coasting mode can be influenced with the shift paddles.

Activating, deactivating coasting via the shift paddles

1. Using the shift paddles + shift to the highest gear.

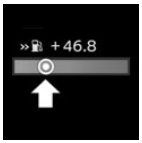
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

2. Press shift paddle + again to enter coasting mode.

To deactivate, press shift paddle - .

Display

Display in the instrument cluster



The bar display below the tachometer is filled in green and the mark appears at the zero point. The tachometer approximately indicates idle speed.

Indications on the Control Display

The coasting driving condition is displayed in MINIMALISM Info while driving.

The distance traveled in the coasting driving condition is indicated by a counter.

Color code green, arrow 1: distance traveled in the coasting driving condition. Symbol, arrow 2: coasting driving condition.

Displaying MINIMALISM info

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "MINIMALISM"
3. "MINIMALISM info"

Deactivating the system manually

The function can be deactivated in the Configure GREEN Mode, refer to page 174, menu, for example, to use the braking effect of the engine when traveling downhill.

Settings are saved for the profile currently being used.

System limits

The function is not available under one of the following conditions.

- ▷ DSC OFF or TRACTION activated.
- ▷ Driving in the dynamic limit range and on steep uphill or downhill grades.
- ▷ Battery charge state temporarily too low or vehicle electrical system drawing excessive current.
- ▷ Cruise control activated.

MINIMALISM driving style analysis

The concept

In this situation the system helps develop an especially efficient driving style and to conserve fuel.

For this purpose, the driving style is analyzed. The assessment is done in various categories and is displayed on the Control Display.

Using this indication, the individual driving style can be oriented toward conserving fuel.

The last fifteen minutes of a trip are evaluated.

The range of the vehicle can be extended by an efficient driving style. This gain in range is displayed as a bonus range in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.

Functional requirement

The function is available in GREEN Mode.

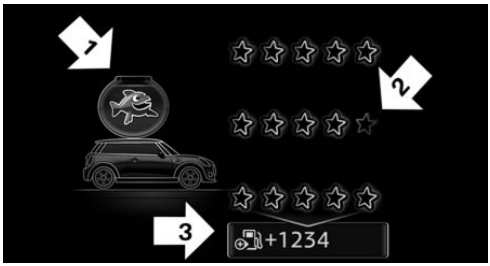
Calling up MINIMALISM Analyser

Via MINI Driving Modes switch

1. Activating GREEN Mode.
2. "MINIMALISM"
3. Select the symbol.

Display

Display on the Control Display



The display of the MINIMALISM Analyser consists of a fish, which is riding along in a glass of water on the roof of the MINI and a table of values that rates the driving style in various categories. The bonus range achieved by driving style that minimizes fuel consumption is displayed below the table of values.

The fish and the movements of the water in the glass symbolize the efficiency of the driving style. The more efficient the driving style, the less the water sloshes around in the glass and the better is the fish's mood, arrow 1.

The table of values contains stars, arrow 2. The more efficient the driving style, the more stars are included in the table and the faster the bonus range increases, arrow 3.

If by contrast the driving style is inefficient, the water oscillates, the mood of the fish is sullied and a reduced number of asterisks is displayed.

To assist with an efficient driving style, GREEN tips are displayed during driving.

Tips about the energy saving driving style, Conserving fuel, refer to page 172.

MOVE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

REFUELING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Observe the fuel recommendation, refer to page 184, prior to refueling.

SAFETY INFORMATION

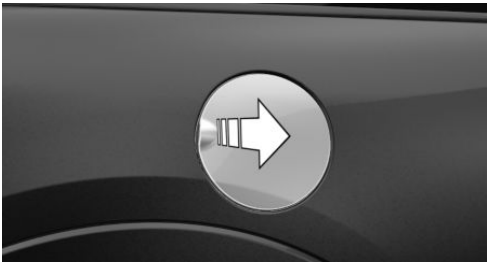
NOTE

With a range of less than 30 miles/50 km it is possible that the engine will no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.◄

FUEL CAP

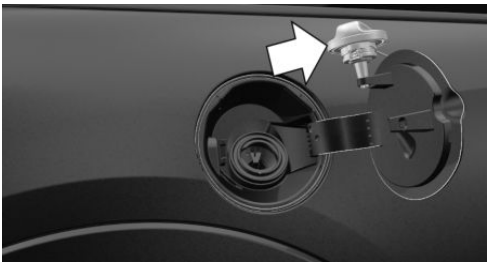
Opening

1. Grasp the fuel filler flap at the rear edge and open it.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.

3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Closing

1. Fit the lid and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.

2. Close the fuel filler flap.

WARNING

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the lid.◀

Manually unlocking fuel filler flap

E.g., in the event of an electrical malfunction.

Have the fuel filler flap checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

OBSERVE THE FOLLOWING WHEN REFUELING

General information

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Observe safety regulations posted at the gas station.

Safety information

NOTE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid overfilling.◀

FUEL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

FUEL RECOMMENDATION

General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter helps make a cold start easier, for example.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i. e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should satisfy the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806–xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

Safety information

NOTE

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- ▷ Leaded gasoline.
- ▷ Metallic additives, e.g., manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

NOTE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use a fuel with a higher ethanol percentage than recommended or one with other types of alcohol, e.g., M5 to M100.◀

NOTE

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.◀

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

CAUTION

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.◀

Recommended fuel grade

MINI recommends AKI 91.

John Cooper Works:

MINI recommends AKI 93.

Minimum fuel grade

MINI recommends AKI 89.

John Cooper Works:

MINI recommends AKI 91.

WHEELS AND TIRES

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE

Safety information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- ▷ The service life of the tires.
- ▷ Road safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

WARNING

A tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of an accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, e.g., twice a month and before a long trip.◂

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

Tires heat up while driving, and the tire inflation pressure increases along with the tire's temperature. The tire inflation pressure specifications relate to cold tires or tires with the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after driving no more than 1.25 miles/2 km or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours.

The displays of inflation devices may underread by up to 0.1 bar.

For Flat Tire Monitor: after correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

For Tire Pressure Monitor: perform a reset of the Tire Pressure Monitor after adjusting tire pressure to a new value.

- ▷ Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.
- ▷ Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Checking the inflation pressure of the emergency wheel

Located behind the bumper on the underside of the vehicle is an opening for checking the tire inflation pressure.

Pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 187, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- ▷ Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- ▷ Maximum permitted driving speed.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

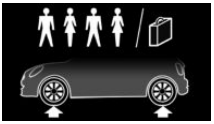
For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 187, and adjust as necessary.

These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

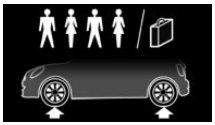
Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

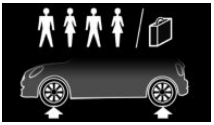
On 3-door models: COOPER

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
175/60 R 16 86 H M+S XL RSC 175/65 R 15 84 H M+S A/S Std 175/65 R 15 84 H M+S Std 175/65 R 15 84 H Std 185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC 195/55 R 16 87 H M+S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 V M+S A/S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 W RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL A/S RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC 205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
Emergency wheel T 115/70 R 15 90 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

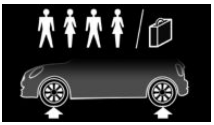
On 3-door models: COOPER S

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
195/55 R 16 87 H M+S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 W RSC	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
175/60 R 16 86 H M+S XL RSC 185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC 205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC	2.6 / 38	2.4 / 35

On 3-door models: JOHN COOPER WORKS

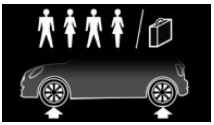
Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL A/S RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL RSC 205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC	2.9 /42	2.7 / 39

On 5-door models: COOPER

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
175/65 R 15 84 H M+S A/S Std 175/65 R 15 84 H M+S Std 175/65 R 15 84 H Std 195/55 R 16 87 H M+S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 V M+S A/S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 W RSC	2.5 / 36	2.3 / 33

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL A/S RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC	2.5 / 36	2.4 / 35
175/60 R 16 86 H M+S XL RSC 205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC 185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC	2.6 / 38	2.6 / 38
Emergency wheel T 115/70 R 15 90 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

On 5-door models: COOPER S

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
195/55 R 16 87 H M+S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 V M+S A/S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 W RSC	2.5 / 36	2.3 / 33
175/60 R 16 86 H M+S XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL A/S RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC 185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC 205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC	2.7 / 39	2.7 / 39

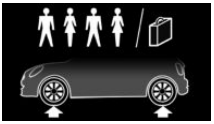
Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

WARNING

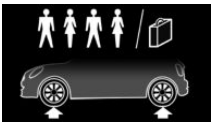
In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.◂

Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

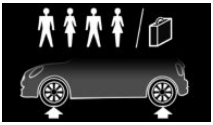
On 3-door models: COOPER

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
175/65 R 15 84 H M+S A/S Std 175/65 R 15 84 H M+S Std 175/65 R 15 84 H Std 175/60 R 16 86 H M+S XL RSC 185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC 195/55 R 16 87 H M+S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 V M+S A/S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 W RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL A/S RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC 205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC	2.8 / 41	2.6 / 38
Emergency wheel T 115/70 R 15 90 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

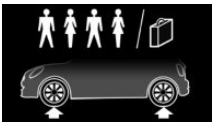
On 3-door models: COOPER S

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
195/55 R 16 87 H M+S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 V M+S A/S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 W RSC	2.8 / 41	2.6 / 38
175/60 R 16 86 H M+S XL RSC 185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL A/S RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC 205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC	3.1 / 45	2.9 /42

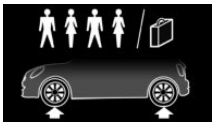
On 3-door models: JOHN COOPER WORKS

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL A/S RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL RSC	3.1 / 45	2.9 /42
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC	3.4 / 49	3.2 / 46

On 5-door models: COOPER

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
175/65 R 15 84 H M+S A/S Std 175/65 R 15 84 H M+S Std 175/65 R 15 84 H Std 195/55 R 16 87 H M+S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 V M+S A/S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 W RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL A/S RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC	2.8 / 41	2.6 / 38
175/60 R 16 86 H M+S XL RSC 185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC 205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC	2.8 / 41	2.8 / 41
Emergency wheel T 115/70 R 15 90 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

On 5-door models: COOPER S

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
195/55 R 16 87 H M+S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC 195/55 R 16 87 W RSC	2.8 / 41	2.8 / 41
175/60 R 16 86 H M+S XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC 205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC 205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC 185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC 205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC	3.1 / 45	3.1 / 45

TIRE IDENTIFICATION MARKS

Tire size

205/45 R 17 84 V

205: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

17: rim diameter in inches

84: load rating, not for ZR tires

F: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Speed letter

T = up to 118 mph, 190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph, 210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph, 240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph, 270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph, 300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 2116

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

2116: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

DOT … 2116: the tire was manufactured in the 21st week of 2016.

Recommendation

Regardless of wear and tear, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested

under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 196, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

TIRE TREAD

Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

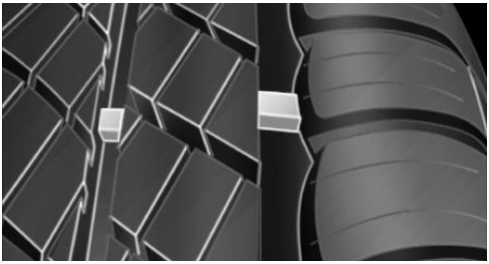
There is an increased danger of hydroplaning if the tire tread depth is less than 0.12 inches/3 mm.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 inches/4 mm.

Below a tread depth of 0.16 inches/4 mm, tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire's circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 inches/1.6 mm.

They are marked on the side of the tire with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

TIRE DAMAGE

General information

Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations while driving.
- ▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can, e.g., be caused by driving over curbs, road damage, or similar things.

Safety information

WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of an accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed.◀

WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of an accident. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.◀

CHANGING WHEELS AND TIRES

Mounting

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel and tire combination

You can ask the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the right wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Incorrect wheel and tire combinations impair the function of a variety of systems such as ABS or DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer.

Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

WARNING

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, e.g., due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.◀

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. These can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

WARNING

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.◀

Winter tires

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then a respective symbol is displayed in your field of vision. The label is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With mounted winter tires, observe and adhere to the permissible maximum speed.

Run-flat tires

If you are already using run-flat tires, for your own safety you should replace them only with the same kind. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Rotating wheels between axles

Different wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated between the axles to achieve even wear. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After rotating, check the tire pressure and correct if needed.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible.

Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

RUN-FLAT TIRES

Label

RSC label on the tire sidewall.

The wheels are composed of tires that are self-supporting to a limited degree.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a tire inflation pressure loss.

Follow the instructions for continued driving with a flat tire.

Changing run-flat tires

For your own safety, only use run-flat tires. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire.

A dealer's service center will be glad to answer additional questions at any time.

REPAIRING A FLAT TIRE

Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

MOBILITY SYSTEM

The concept

With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

General information

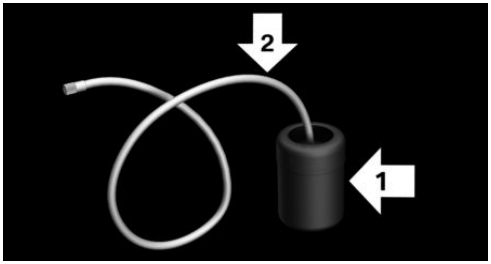
- ▷ Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- ▷ Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 inches/4 mm or more.
- ▷ Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- ▷ If possible, do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire.
- ▷ Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
- ▷ The use of a sealant can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked at the next opportunity and have them replaced, if needed.

Storage

The Mobility System is located under the cargo floor panel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Sealant container

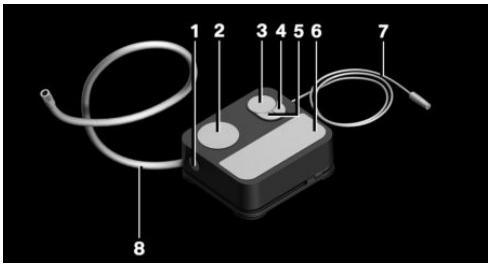


▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.

▷ Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



1 Sealant container unlocking

2 Holder for sealant container

3 Inflation pressure dial

4 Reduce inflation pressure

5 On/off switch

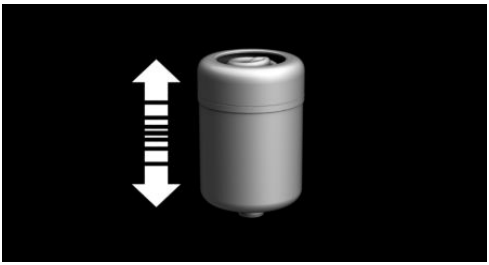
6 Compressor

7 Connector/cable for socket

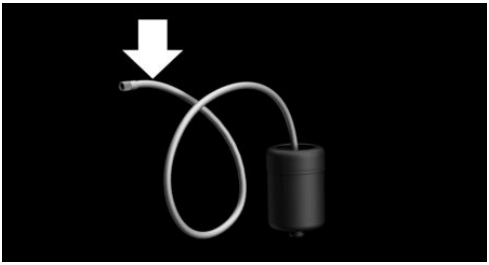
8 Connection hose

Filling the tire with sealant

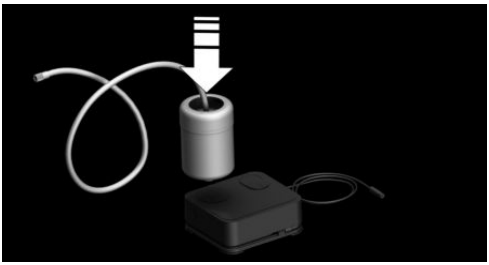
1. Shake the sealant container.



2. Pull filling hose completely out of the cover of the sealant bottle. Do not kink the hose.



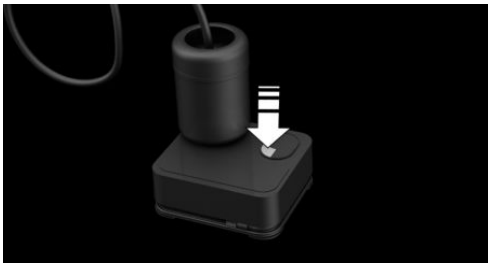
3. Slide the sealing container into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.



4. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.

5. With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into the power socket inside the vehicle.

6. With standby state switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.



Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.5 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.◂

NOTE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of property damage. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 min.◂

Checking the tire inflation pressure

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Read out the pressure on the tire pressure gage.

If a tire inflation pressure of 2 bar is not reached:

1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the wheel.
2. Press the red release button.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
5. Inflate the tire again using the compressor.

   If a tire inflation pressure of 2 bar cannot be reached, contact your dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Stowing the Mobility System

1. Remove the connection hose of the sealant container from the wheel.
2. Press the red release button.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.

4. Wrap the empty sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.
5. Stow the Mobility System back in the vehicle.

Distributing the sealant

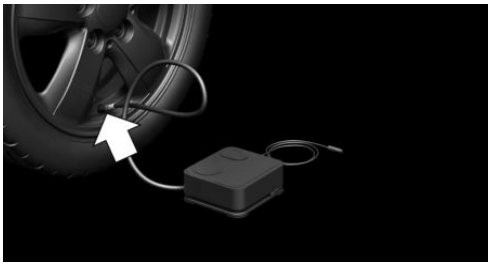
Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

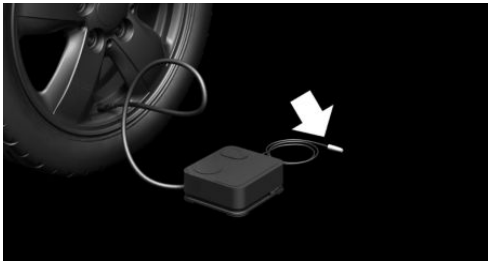
If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

To correct the tire inflation pressure

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



3. Insert the connector into a power socket inside the vehicle.



4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar.

▷ Increase pressure: with the ignition turned on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.

▷ To reduce the pressure: press the button on the compressor.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 110.

Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 106.

Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System as soon as possible.

SNOW CHAINS

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

WARNING

With the mounting of snow chains on unsuitable tires, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Only mount snow chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of snow chains.◀

Use only in pairs on the front wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

▷ 175/65 R 15.

▷ 175/60 R 16.

John Cooper Works:

▷ 185/50 R 17.

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not initialize the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control, if needed.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

CHANGING WHEELS/TIRES

General information

When using runflat tires or tire sealants, a tire does not always need to be changed immediately in the event of pressure loss due to a flat tire.

If needed, the tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

On soft or slippery ground, e.g., snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the tire/wheel on a flat, solid and slip-resistant surface.◂

WARNING

The vehicle jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety measures are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling, if the vehicle jack tilts over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine.◂

WARNING

If the vehicle jack is not inserted into the designated jacking point, damage to the vehicle may occur while cranking the vehicle up, or the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle jack is inserted into the jacking point next to the wheel house while cranking the vehicle up.◂

WARNING

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.◂

Secure the vehicle against rolling

General information

When changing wheels, the vehicle manufacturer recommends that you additionally secure the vehicle against rolling.

On a level surface

Place chocks or other suitable objects in front of and behind the wheel that is diagonally opposite to the wheel that you wish to change.

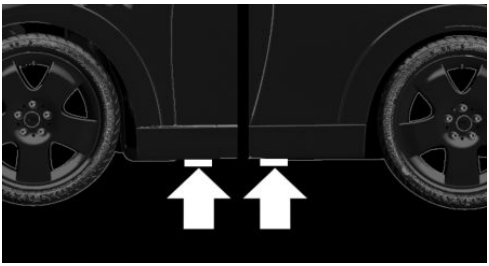
On a slight downhill gradient

If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill gradient, place chocks or other suitable objects, for example a rock, under the wheels of both the front and rear axles.

Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid and non-slip ground.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- ▷ As soon as the traffic flow permits, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ Depending on your vehicle's equipment, remove the tool and the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning lamp at an appropriate distance.
- ▷ Do not place wood blocks or similar items under the vehicle jack; otherwise, it cannot reach its carrying capacity because of the restricted height.
- ▷ Also secure the vehicle against rolling.
- ▷ Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the positions shown.

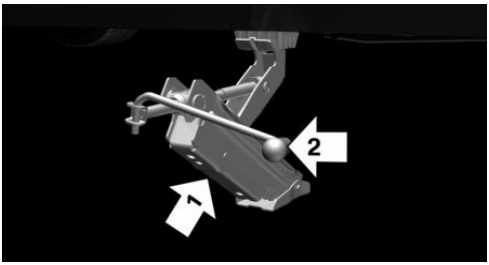
Jacking up the vehicle

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the crank with your other hand, arrow 2.

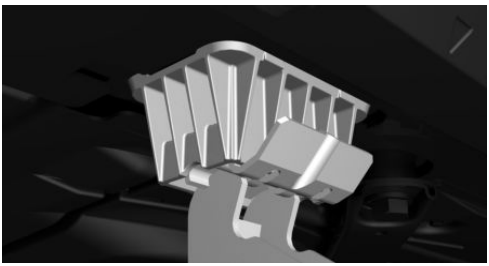
   WARNING

   Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the vehicle jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand

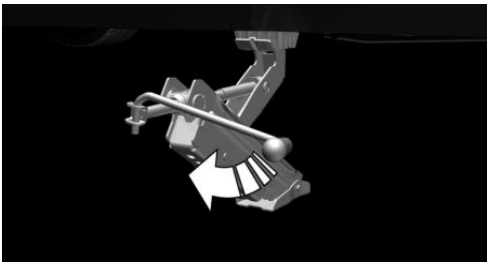
position and do not change this position while using the vehicle jack.◀



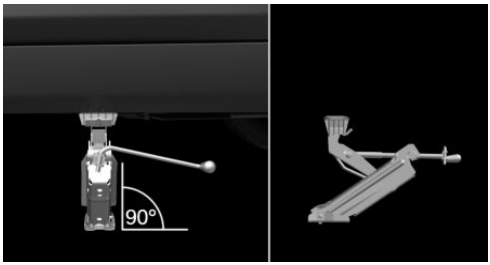
2. Insert the vehicle jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point which is nearest to the wheel that you are changing.



3. Extend the vehicle jack by turning the crank clockwise.



4. When extending the vehicle jack, ensure that the foot of the vehicle jack is positioned vertically and at right angles beneath the vehicle jacking point.



5. Crank up the vehicle jack until the entire surface of the jack is in contact with the ground and the wheel in question is raised a maximum of 1.2 inches/3 cm off the ground.

Wheel mounting

Mount one emergency wheel only.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts and remove the wheel.
2. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   If non-original light-alloy wheels are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
3. Screw in the remaining lug bolts until hand-tight and tighten all bolts in a crosswise pattern.
4. Turn the crank on the vehicle jack counterclockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
5. Remove the vehicle jack.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lb ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the cargo area.

The nonworking wheel cannot be stored under the cargo floor panel because of its size.

3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

   Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Have the damaged tire replaced at the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

EMERGENCY WHEEL

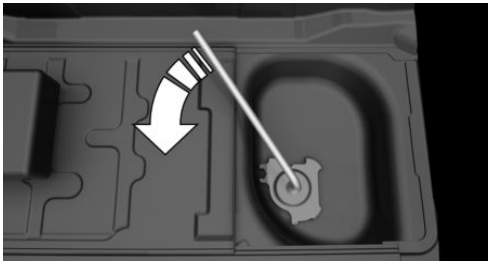
General information

In the event of a flat tire, the emergency wheel can be used in place of the wheel with the defective tire. The emergency wheel is only intended for temporary use to allow you to get the defective tire/wheel replaced.

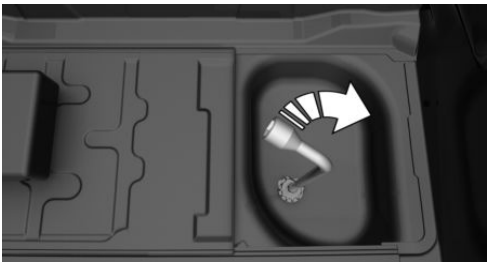
Removing the emergency wheel

The emergency wheel is housed in a well on the underbody of the vehicle. The screw connection of the emergency wheel is in the cargo area underneath the floor mat, on the floor of the storage compartment for the onboard vehicle tool kit.

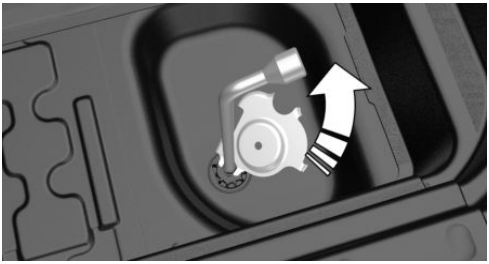
1. Loosen the nut using the wheel wrench from the onboard vehicle tool kit.



2. Remove the retaining plate.
3. Screw wheel lug wrench onto the thread and hold in place with one hand.



4. Unlock the locking hexagon of the emergency wheel well using the hexagon attached to retaining plate.



5. Lower the emergency wheel with the wheel wrench.
6. Unscrewing the wheel wrench
7. Pull out the well with emergency wheel under the vehicle toward the rear.
8. Remove the spacer and emergency wheel from the well.
9. Stow the well and spacer in the vehicle.

Driving with emergency wheel

WARNING

The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed driving properties may occur at higher speeds, e.g., reduced lane stability when braking, longer braking distance and changed self-steering properties in the limit area. There is a risk of an accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.◀

After the trip with emergency wheel

Have the following work performed only by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

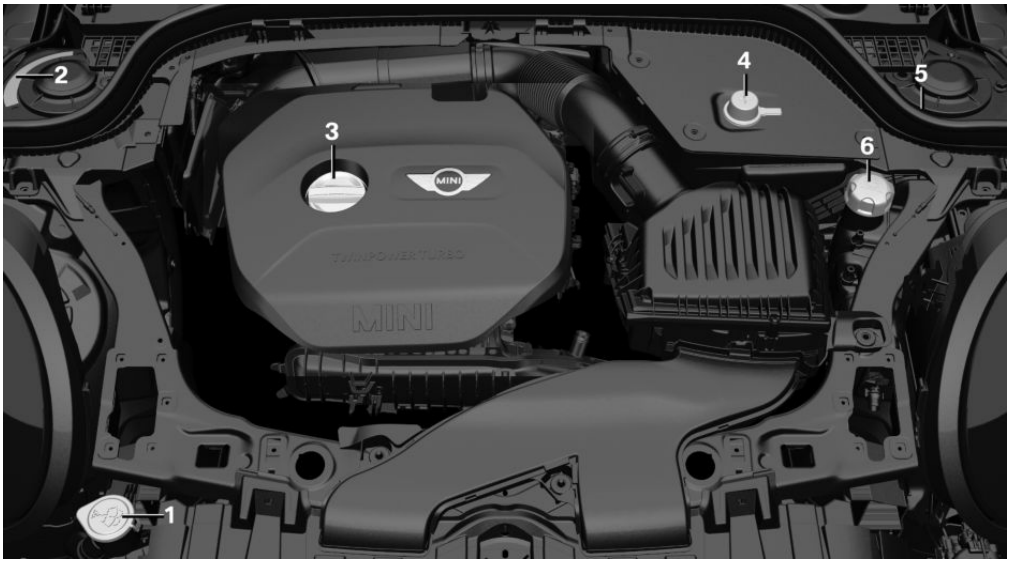
1. Replace the damaged tires as soon as possible.
2. Replace the emergency wheel with a new wheel.
3. Have the tray with the emergency wheel installed.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

IMPORTANT FEATURES IN THE ENGINE COMP.



1 Washer fluid reservoir
2 Vehicle identification number
3 Oil filler neck
4 Jump-starting, positive terminal
5 Jump-starting, negative terminal
6 Coolant reservoir

HOOD

Safety information

WARNING

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of personal and property damage. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that, in the effort to avoid such risks, work in the engine compartment be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

WARNING

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, e.g., the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.◀

WARNING

There are protruding parts, e.g., locking hook, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep these areas clear.◀

WARNING

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of an accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.◀

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the hood is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.◀

Opening the hood

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

   Hood is unlocked.

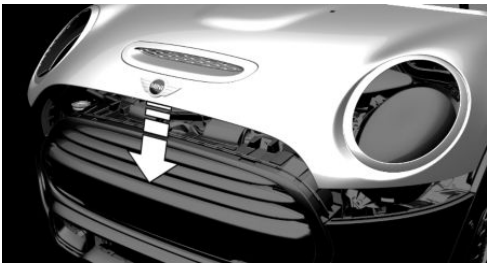
2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.

Indicator/warning lights

When the hood is opened, a Check Control message is displayed.

Closing the hood



Let the hood fall from approx. 16 inches/40 cm, arrow.

The hood must engage on both sides.

ENGINE OIL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

The engine oil consumption is dependent on the driving style and driving conditions.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ Sporty driving style.
- ▷ Break-in of the engine.
- ▷ Idling of the engine.
- ▷ With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling.

The vehicle is equipped with electronic oil measurement.

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- ▷ Status display.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

ELECTRONIC OIL MEASUREMENT

Status display

The concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.

Requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of driving. During a shorter trip, the status of the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

With frequent short-distance trips, perform a detailed measurement.

Displaying the engine oil level

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Engine oil level display messages

Different messages appear on the display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

If the engine oil level is too low within the next 125 miles/200 km, add engine oil, refer to page 208.

When the engine oil pressure is too high, a red indicator lamp is displayed.

NOTE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.◂

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

NOTE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◂

Detailed measurement

The concept

In the detailed measurement the engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary, and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ Manual transmission: shift lever in neutral position, clutch and accelerator pedals not depressed.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- ▷ Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Measure engine oil level"
4. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Time: approx. 1 minute.

ADDING ENGINE OIL

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message displayed in the instrument cluster.

Switch off the ignition and safely park the vehicle before engine oil is added.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating materials, e.g., oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Observe the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.◂

NOTE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage.

Add engine oil within the next 125 miles/200 km.◂

NOTE

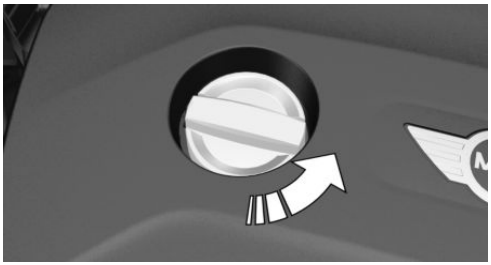
Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◂

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment, refer to page 205.

Opening the oil filler neck

1. Open the hood, refer to page 205.
2. Turn the oil filler neck counter-clockwise, arrow.



3. Add engine oil.

After refilling, perform a detailed measurement, refer to page 208.

ENGINE OIL TYPES TO ADD

General information

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Safety information

NOTE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use oil additives.◀

NOTE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of property damage. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil rating.◀

Suitable engine oil types

Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-01 FE.

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-01.
API SL or superior oil rating.

Viscosity grades

Gasoline engine:

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the viscosity grade SAE 0W-20. Alternatively, also engine oils with viscosity grades SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-20, SAE 5W-30, SAE 0W-40 or SAE 5W-40 can be used.

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

ENGINE OIL CHANGE

NOTE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Do not exceed the service data indicated in the vehicle.◀

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.

MINI recommends
MINI Original Engine Oil.

COOLANT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

SAFETY INFORMATION

WARNING

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.◀

WARNING

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.◀

COOLANT LEVEL

Overview

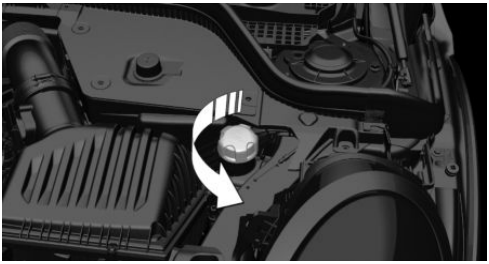
Open the hood, refer to page 205.

The coolant reservoir is in the engine compartment, refer to page 205.

Checking

There are yellow Min and Max marks in the coolant reservoir.

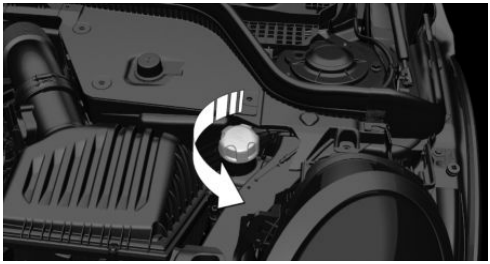
1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.



3. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.

Adding

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.



3. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
4. Close cap.
5. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

DISPOSAL

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

MAINTENANCE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

MINI MAINTENANCE SYSTEM

The maintenance system indicates required maintenance measures, and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases scopes and intervals may vary according to the country-specific version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

CONDITION BASED SERVICE CBS

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle. Based on this, Condition Based Service recognizes the maintenance requirements.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

Information on service requirements, refer to page 85, can be displayed on the Control Display.

Service data in the remote control

Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. The dealer's service center can read this data out and suggest an optimized maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the remote control with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

SERVICE AND WARRANTY INFORMATION BOOKLET FOR US MODELS AND WARRANTY AND SERVICE GUIDE BOOKLET FOR CANADIAN MODELS

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

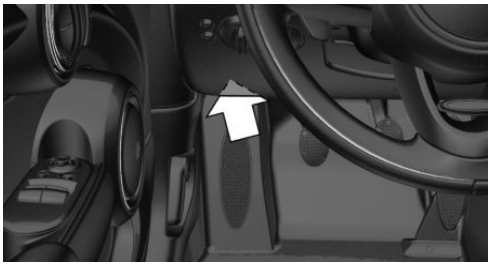
SOCKET FOR OBD ONBOARD DIAGNOSIS

Safety information

NOTE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle’s primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.◀

Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

Emissions

▷ The warning lamp lights up:

Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

▷ The warning lamp flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

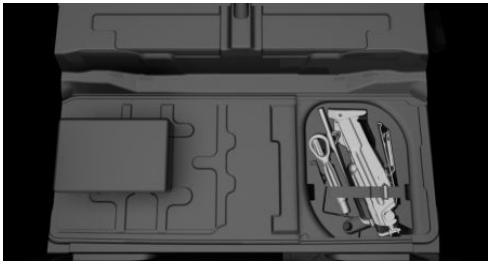
Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

REPLACING COMPONENTS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

ONBOARD VEHICLE TOOL KIT



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located in the trough under the trunk floor.

WIPER BLADE REPLACEMENT

Safety information

NOTE

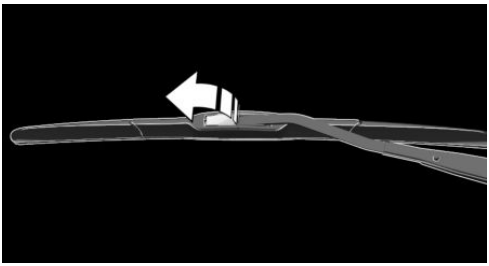
If the wiper arm falls onto the windshield without the wiper blades installed, the windshield can be damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Secure the wiper arm when replacing the wiper blades and do not fold down the wipers without the wiper blades installed.◂

NOTE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.◂

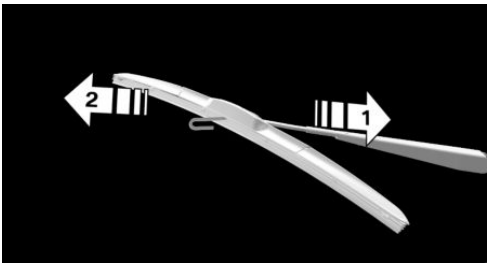
Replacing the front wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up, refer to page 72, the wiper arms.
2. Fold up and hold the wiper arm firmly.
3. Open the wiper blade lock, arrow.



4. Pull the wiper blade down first out of the holder on the wiper arm, arrow 1.

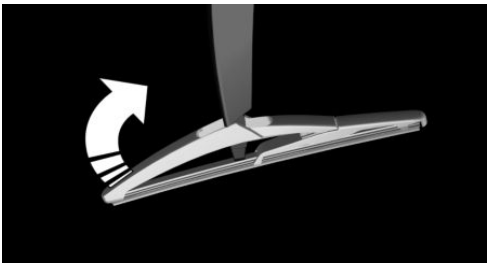
   Then pull the wiper blade free from the holder of the wiper arm, arrow 2.



5. Insert and latch a new wiper blade in reverse order.
6. Fold down the wipers.

Replace rear wiper blade

1. Fold up and hold the wiper arm firmly.
2. Turn the wiper blade all the way back.



3. Continue turning the wiper blade all the way so that it pops out of the holder.
4. Press the new wiper blade into the holder until you hear it snap into place.
5. Fold the wipers in.

LAMP AND BULB REPLACEMENT

General information

Lights and bulbs

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have appropriate work performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if you are unfamiliar with it or if it has not been described here.

A spare lamp box is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Observe the safety information, refer to page 216.

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are related to conventional lasers and are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Observe the safety information, refer to page 216.

Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the external lights in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the lights switched on, increasing humidity forms, e. g. water droplets in the lamp, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends having it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Headlight setting

The headlight adjustments can be affected by changing lights and bulbs. After the headlight adjustment was changed, have it checked and, if necessary, corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Lights and bulbs

WARNING

Bulbs can get hot during operation. Contact with the bulbs can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Only change bulbs after they have cooled off.◀

WARNING

Work on switched-on lighting systems can cause short circuits. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. When working on the lighting system, switch off the lamps in question. If necessary, heed the bulb manufacturer's instructions.◀

NOTE

Dirty bulbs have a reduced service life. There is a risk of property damage. Do not hold new bulbs with your bare hands. Use a clean cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◀

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

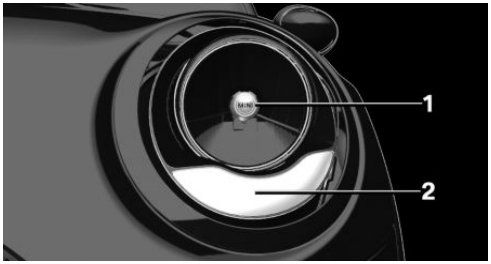
WARNING

Too intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.◀

Front lights, bulb replacement

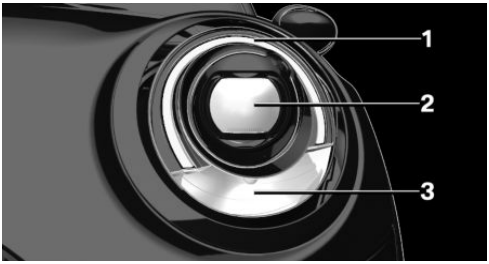
Overview

Halogen headlights



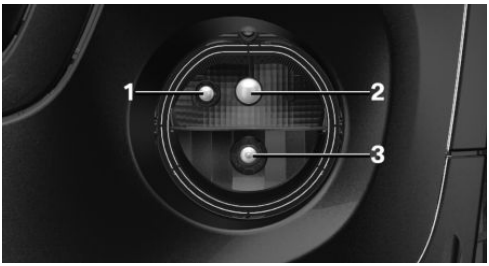
1 Low beams/high beams
2 Turn signal

LED headlights



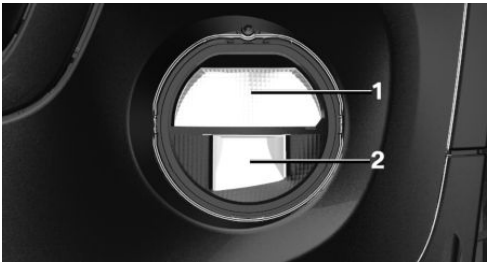
1 Daytime running lights
2 Low beams/high beams
3 Turn signal

Bug light



1 Parking lights
2 Daytime running lights
3 Fog lights

LED bug light



1 Parking lights
2 Fog lights

LED low beams/LED high beams

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 216.

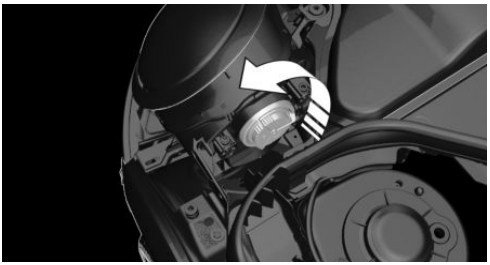
The lights feature LED technology. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Halogen low beams/halogen high beams

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 216.

Bulbs: H4

1. Open the hood, refer to page 206.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow, and remove.



3. Pull off the connector.
4. Unclip spring clip, arrow, and fold down.

5. Remove the bulb from the headlight housing.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

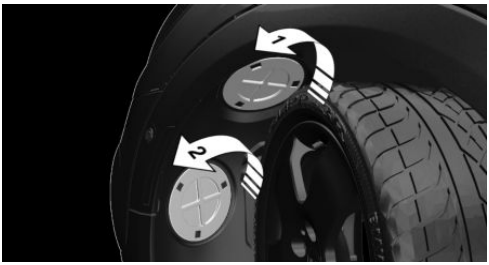
Turn signal

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 216.

Bulbs: PW24W

With white turn signal lights: PWY24W

1. Turn the steering wheel.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow 1, and remove.



3. Unscrew the inner lid counterclockwise, and remove it.

4. Pull bulb holder out of the bulb housing; if needed, loosen it with small tilting movements if possible.

5. Pull the bulb out of the fixture.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

LED parking lights/LED fog lights

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 216.

The lights feature LED technology. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking lights/fog lights/daytime running lights

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 216.

Bulbs:

- ▷ Parking lights for halogen headlights: W5W

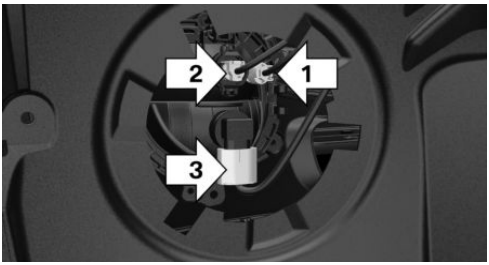
  Parking lights for LED headlights: W5W NBV.
- ▷ Daytime running light: PSX24W.
- ▷ Fog lamp: H8.

Replacing the bulbs

1. Turn the steering wheel.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow 2, and remove.

3. Pull off the connector.
4. Remove the bulb holder.
   - ▷ Parking lights: turn the bulb holder, arrow 1, counter-clockwise and remove.
   - ▷ Daytime running lights: press together the upper and lower locking of the bulb holder, arrow 2, and remove the bulb holder.

     For better accessibility, remove the bulb of the fog lamp as needed.
   - ▷ Fog lamps: turn the bulb holder, arrow 3, counter-clockwise and remove.



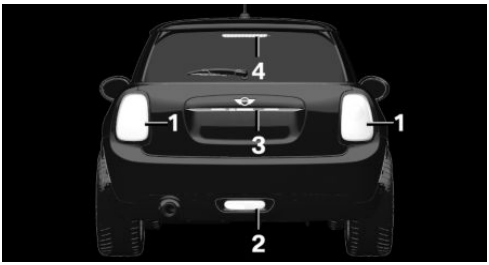
5. Pull the bulb out of the fixture.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

   The daytime running lights bulb holder engages audibly, first below, then above.

Tail lamps, bulb replacement

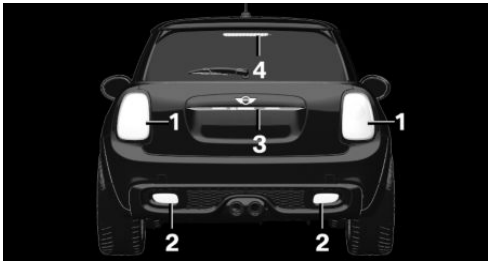
Overview

Vehicles with a rear fog lamp



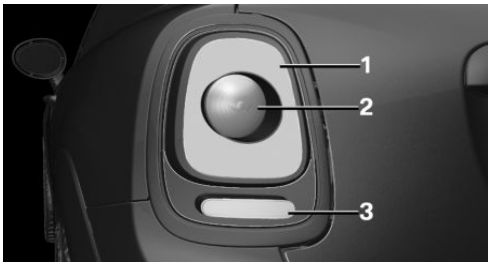
1 Side tail lamps
2 Rear fog lamp
3 License plate lamp
4 Center brake lamp

Vehicle with two rear fog lights



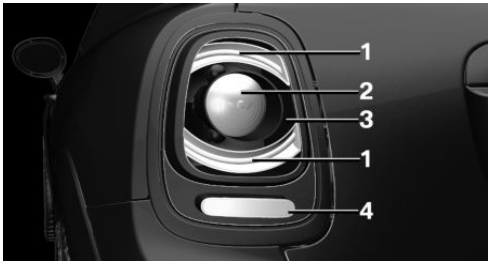
1 Side tail lamps
2 Rear fog lights
3 License plate lamp
4 Center brake lamp

Side tail lamps



1 Brake lights/tail lamps
2 Turn signal
3 Reversing lights

Side LED tail lights



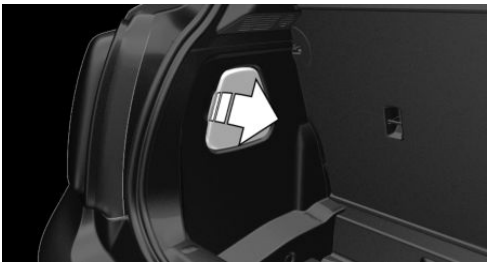
1 Tail lamps
2 Turn signal
3 Brake light
4 Reversing lights

Side tail lamps

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 216.

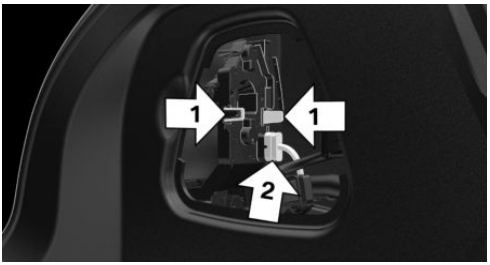
Bulbs: P21W

1. Open tailgate, refer to page 40.
2. Remove left or right cover.



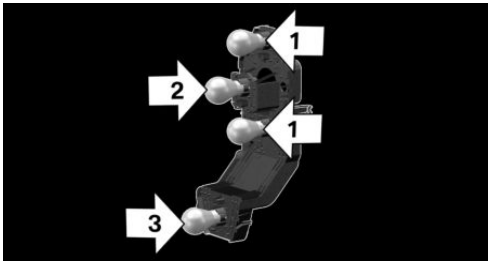
3. Through the opening, loosen the plug connector, arrow 2 on the bulb holder.

   Press the latches together, arrows 1, and remove the bulb holder.



4. Remove the bulb holder from the opening.
5. Press the nonworking bulb gently into the socket, turn counterclockwise and remove.
   - ▷ Arrow 1: brake lights/tail lamps.
   - ▷ Arrow 2: turn signal.

▷ Arrow 3: reversing light.



6. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder. Make sure that the bulb holder engages in all fasteners.

Central brake lamp and license plate lamp

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 216.

The lights feature LED technology. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

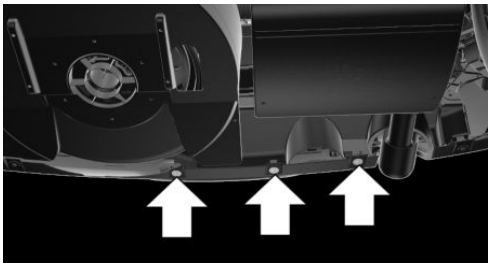
Vehicles with a rear fog lamp

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 216.

Bulbs: W16W

1. On vehicles with heat shield:

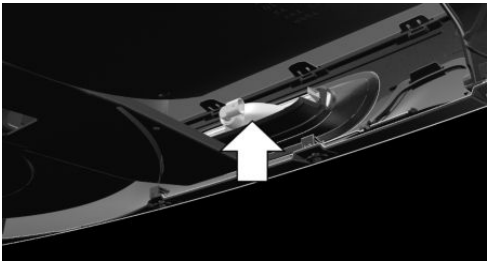
   Loosen 3 screws, arrow.



2. Push the heat shield forward and the bumper back in order to be able to reach the fog lamp.

3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.

   The wire is long enough to guide the socket down and through between any heat shield that may be installed and the bumper.



4. Replace nonworking bulb.
5. To install the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal.

Vehicle with two rear fog lights

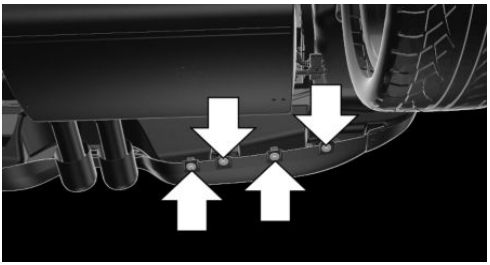
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 216.

Bulbs: W16W

Left rear fog lamp:

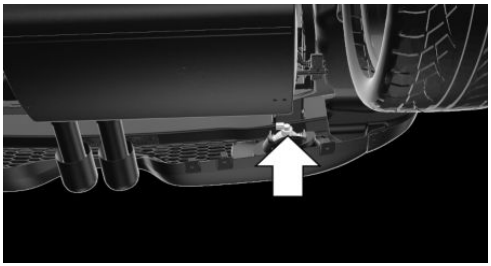
1. On vehicles with heat shield:

   Loosen 3 screws, arrow.



2. Push the heat shield forward and the bumper back in order to be able to reach the fog lamp.
3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.

The wire is long enough to guide the socket down and through between any heat shield that may be installed and the bumper.



4. Replace nonworking bulb.
5. To install the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal.

Right fog lamp:

1. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.

   The wire is long enough to guide the socket down and through between any heat shield that may be installed and the bumper.

2. Replace nonworking bulb.
3. To install the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal.

Side turn signal, bulb replacement

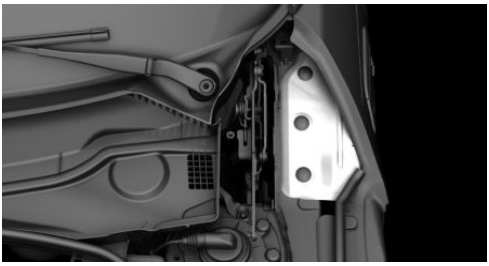
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 216.

Bulbs:

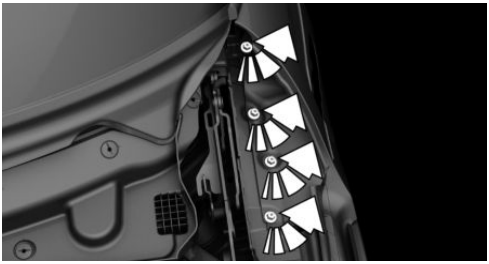
▷ With orange lens: W5W.

▷ With white lens: WY5W.

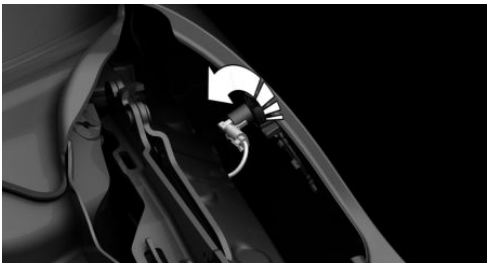
1. Open the hood. The covers of the side turn signal lights are on the left and right next to the hinges of the hood.



2. Loosen nuts of the cover by hand and remove the cover.



3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove.



4. Replace the bulb.
5. To insert the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal. Insert the nuts of the cover and press down.

VEHICLE BATTERY

Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free.

The added amount of acid is sufficient for the service life of the battery.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Battery replacement

NOTE

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of personal and property damage. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer's service center.◀

After a battery replacement, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that the vehicle battery be registered on the vehicle by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop to ensure that all comfort features are fully available and that any Check Control messages of these comfort features are no longer displayed.

Charging the battery

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

A red indicator lamp is displayed when the battery is discharged.

The battery may need to be charged in the following cases:

- ▷ When making frequent short-distance drives.
- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for more than a month.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: when parked for long periods of time in selector lever position D, R or N.

Safety information

NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.◀

Starting aid terminals

In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals, refer to page 226, in the engine compartment with the engine off.

Power failure

After a power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- ▷ Time: update.
- ▷ Date: update.
- ▷ Glass sunroof: initialize the system.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

FUSES

Safety information

WARNING

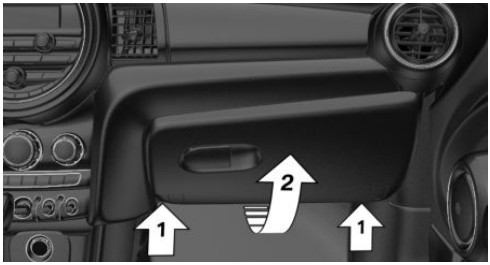
Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.◀

Replacing a fuse

The fuses are located in the passenger floor area under the dashboard.

Plastic tweezers and information on the fuse types and locations are stored in the fuse box.

1. To open, loosen screws, arrow 1.



2. Fold down the fuse holder, arrow 2.
3. Replace the fuse in question.
4. The installation is done in reverse order from the removal.

BREAKDOWN ASSISTANCE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

The button is located above the Control Display.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Service availability

Roadside Assistance can be reached around the clock in many countries. You can obtain assistance there in the event of a vehicle breakdown.

Roadside Assistance

The Roadside Assistance phone number can be viewed on the onboard monitor or a connection to Roadside Assistance can be established directly.

WARNING TRIANGLE

The warning triangle is located in the tailgate. To remove, loosen the brackets.

FIRST-AID KIT

The first-aid kit is located in the cargo area.

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

JUMP-STARTING

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.◀

Preparation

NOTE

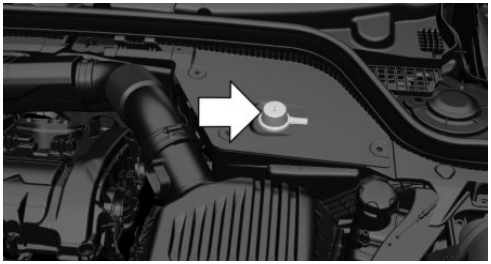
In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that no body contact occurs.◀

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

Starting aid terminals

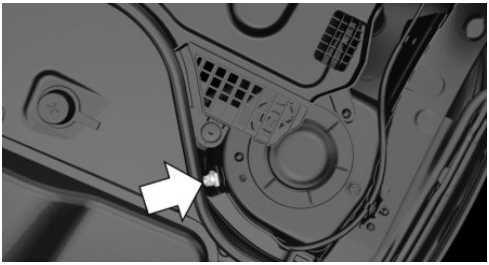
WARNING

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparking may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.◀



The starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.

Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.



The body ground or a special nut acts as the battery negative terminal.

Connecting the cables

1. Pull off the lid of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge if needed.

TOW-STARTING AND TOWING

Safety information

WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g., approach control warning with light braking function. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

Switching off Intelligent Safety systems, refer to page 112.

Steptronic transmission with driven front axle: transporting the vehicle

General information

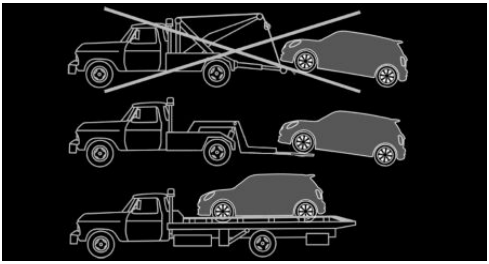
The vehicle must not be towed if the front wheels are touching the ground.

Safety information

NOTE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a lifted rear axle. There is a risk of property damage. Have vehicle transported only with lifted front axle or on a loading platform.◀

Tow truck



Your vehicle should be transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

NOTE

When lifting the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; damage can occur on vehicle parts. There is a risk of property damage. Lift vehicle using suitable means.◀

Use tow fitting located in the front only for positioning the vehicle.

Pushing the vehicle

To remove a disabled vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance. The vehicle can only be pushed in selector lever position N.

In order to ensure that the vehicle can roll, proceed as follows:

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Engage selector lever position N.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Manually unlock the transmission lock, refer to page 76, if needed.

Manual transmission

Observe before towing your vehicle

Gearshift lever in neutral position.

Towing

NOTE

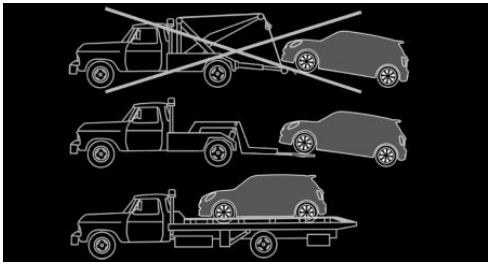
If manual unlocking of the parking brake is not possible, the vehicle cannot be moved or towed. There is a risk of property damage. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.◂

Information the following instructions:

- ▷ Make sure that the ignition is switched on; otherwise, the low beams, tail lamps, turn signals, and wipers may be unavailable.
- ▷ Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle tilted, as the front wheels could turn.
- ▷ When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. Consequently, more force needs to be applied when braking and steering.
- ▷ Larger steering wheel movements are required.
- ▷ The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing distance of 30 miles/50 km.

Tow truck

With driven front axle



Have your vehicle transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

NOTE

When lifting the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; damage can occur on vehicle parts. There is a risk of property damage. Lift vehicle using suitable means.◂

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

WARNING

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is a risk of an accident! Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.◂

NOTE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of property damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.◂

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

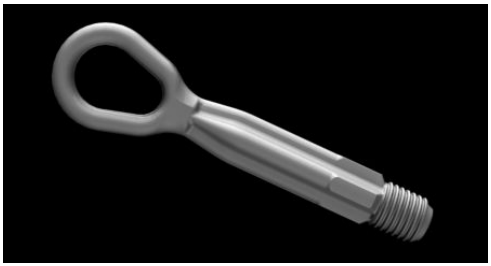
To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on the vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps.

NOTE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of property damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.◀

Tow fitting

General information



The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting and the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 215, are together in the cargo area.

Use of the tow fitting:

- ▷ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- ▷ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- ▷ Use tow fitting located in the front only for positioning the vehicle.
- ▷ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g., do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

Safety information

NOTE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there can be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of property damage. Observe the notes on using the tow fitting.◀

Screw thread for tow fitting

Threaded holes for the tow fitting are located in the front and rear of the vehicle on the right side with respect to the direction of travel.

Push out the cover by pressing on the top edge.

Tow-starting

Steptronic transmission

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Tow-starting the engine is not possible due to the Steptronic transmission.

Have the cause of the starting problems fixed.

Manual transmission

If possible, do not tow-start the vehicle but start the engine by jump-starting, refer to page 225. If the vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter, only tow-start while the engine is cold.

1. Switch on the hazard warning system and comply with local regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 64.
3. Engage third gear.
4. Have the vehicle tow-started with the clutch pedal pressed and slowly release the

pedal. After the engine starts, immediately press on the clutch pedal again.

5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope, and switch off the hazard warning system.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

CARE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

VEHICLE WASHES

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Steam jets or high-pressure washers

Safety information

NOTE

When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of property damage. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.◀

Distances and temperature

- ▷ Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- ▷ Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 inches/30 cm.
- ▷ Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 inches/80 cm.

Automatic vehicle washes

Safety information

NOTE

Water can penetrate in the windshield area due to high-pressure washers. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid high-pressure washers.◀

NOTE

Improper use of automatic vehicle washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Information the following instructions:

- ▷ Give preference to cloth vehicle washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- ▷ Avoid vehicle washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the chassis.
- ▷ Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- ▷ Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- ▷ Unscrew the rod antenna to avoid the rod antenna breaking off.
- ▷ Deactivate rain sensor, if necessary, to avoid damage to the wiper system.◀

Before driving into a vehicle wash

In order to ensure that the vehicle can roll in a vehicle wash, take the following steps:

Manual transmission:

1. Drive into the vehicle wash.
2. Shift to neutral.
3. Switch the engine off.

Steptronic transmission:

1. Drive into the vehicle wash.
2. Engage selector lever position N.
3. Make sure that the parking brake is released.
4. Press the Start/Stop button to switch off the engine.

   In this way, the ignition remains switched on, and two Check-Control messages are displayed.

In some vehicle washes, you are required to leave the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal is sounded when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

A signal sounds when you leave the vehicle while in selector lever position N.

Driving out of a vehicle wash

To start the engine with manual transmission:

1. Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.
2. Press on the clutch pedal.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

To start the engine with Steptronic transmission:

1. Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

Headlights

- ▷ Do not rub dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleansers.
- ▷ Soak areas that have been dirtied e. g., from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.
- ▷ Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced. The heat generated when braking helps to dry the brake discs and pads and protect them from corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

VEHICLE CARE

Vehicle care products

General information

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends using care and cleaning products from MINI.

Safety information

WARNING

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.◀

Vehicle paint

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather often, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Suitable care products are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Upholstery material care

General information

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, e.g., with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Safety information

NOTE

Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of property damage. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.◀

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disk.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated when braking helps to dry the brake discs and pads and protect them from corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends original MINI care products.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components

NOTE

Cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of property damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen cloth lightly with water.◂

Plastic components are e. g:

- ▷ Imitation leather surfaces.
- ▷ Roofliner.
- ▷ Lamp lenses.
- ▷ Instrument cluster cover.
- ▷ Matt black spray-coated components.
- ▷ Painted parts in the interior.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen cloth lightly with water.

Do not soak the roofliner.

Safety belts

WARNING

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.◂

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.

Do not allow the switchs to retract the safety belts until they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

WARNING

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, e.g., for cleaning.◂

Floor mats can be removed from the vehicle's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Sensor/camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Displays/Screens/Projection lenses

NOTE

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of property damage. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.◂

NOTE

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.◂

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

Head-up Display:

For stubborn soiling on the projection lens of the Head-up Display, dampen the microfiber cloth with alcohol. Extending projection lens, refer to page 94.

Long-term

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from a dealer's

service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

FIND ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

TECHNICAL DATA

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable country provisions must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

The technical data and specifications in this Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, e.g., due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The information in the vehicle documents always has priority over the information in this Owner's Manual.

DIMENSIONS

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, e.g., a roof antenna, roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, e.g., due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

MINI 3-door		
Width with mirrors	inches/mm	76.1/1,932
Width without mirrors	inches/mm	68/1,727
Height	inches/mm	55.7/1,414
Length	inches/mm	151.1-152.5/3,837-3,874
Wheelbase	inches/mm	98.2/2,495
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	35.5/10.8

MINI 5-door		
Width with mirrors	inches/mm	76.1/1,932
Width without mirrors	inches/mm	68/1,727
Height	inches/mm	56.1/1,425
Length	inches/mm	157.4-158/3,998-4,013
Wheelbase	inches/mm	101.1/2,567
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	36.1/11.0

WEIGHTS

MINI Cooper, 3-door		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	3,565/1,617
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	3,565/1,617
Load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	790/358
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	725/329
Approved front axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	1,920/871
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	1,990/903
Approved rear axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	1,725/782
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	1,685/764
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	132/60
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	8.7-34
Canada: cargo area capacity	cu ft/l	7.4-25.8/211-731

MINI Cooper, 5-door		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	3,795/1,721
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	3,795/1,721
Load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	885/401
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	820/372
Approved front axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	1,995/905
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	2,065/937
Approved rear axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	1,880/853
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	1,860/844
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	13.1-40.7
Canada: cargo area capacity	cu ft/l	9.8-33.2/278-941

MINI Cooper S, 3-door		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	3,620/1,642
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	3,650/1,656
Load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	775/352
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	770/349
Approved front axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	2,025/919
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	2,060/934
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	1,690/767
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	132/60

MINI Cooper S, 3-door		
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	8.7-34
Canada: cargo area capacity	cu ft/l	7.4-25.8/211-731

MINI Cooper S, 5-door		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	3,860/1,751
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	3,900/1,769
Load	lbs/kg	885/401
Approved front axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	2,085/946
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	2,125/964
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	1,880/853
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	13.1-40.7
Canada: cargo area capacity	cu ft/l	9.8-33.2/278-941

MINI John Cooper Works, 3-door		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	3,720/1,687
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	3,765/1,708
Load	lbs/kg	775/352
Approved front axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	2,065/937
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	2,105/955
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	1,725/782
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	132/60
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	8.7-34
Canada: cargo area capacity	cu ft/l	7.4-25.8/211-731

CAPACITIES

MINI	US gal/liters	
Fuel tank, approx.	11.6/44.0	Fuel quality, refer to page 184

APPENDIX

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

UPDATES MADE AFTER THE EDITORIAL DEADLINE

These chapters of the printed Owner's Manual contain updates made after the editorial deadline.

▷ Airbags: protective effect: information on the optimum protective effect of the airbags, refer to page 104.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16

EVERYTHING FROM A TO Z

INDEX

A

ABS, Antilock Brake System 120
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 77
Accessories and parts 8
ACC, see camera-based cruise control 124
Activated-charcoal filter 147
Active Cruise Control, see camera-based cruise control 124
Additives, oil 209
Adjustments, seats/head restraints 50
Adjustments, steering wheel 58
After washing vehicle 232
Airbags 103
Airbags, indicator/warning light 105
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 143, 146
Air conditioner 142
Air, dehumidifying, see Cooling function 143, 145
Air distribution, manual 143, 146
Air flow, air conditioner 143
Air flow, automatic climate control 146
Air pressure, tires 186
Air vents, see Ventilation 147
Alarm system 44
Alarm triggering 44
Alarm, unintentional 45
All-season tires, see Winter tires 195
Alternating-code hand-held transmitter 150
Alternative oil types 209
Antifreeze, washer fluid 73
Antilock Brake System, ABS 120
Anti-slip control, see DSC 120
App, MINI Motorer's Guide 6
Approved axle load 239
Arrival time 89
Ash tray 153
Assistance, Roadside Assistance 225
Assistance when driving off 123
AUTO intensity 146
Automatic climate control 144
Automatic Curb Monitor 57
Automatic deactivation, Front-seat passenger airbags 105
Automatic headlamp control 99
Automatic locking 44
Automatic recirculated-air control 146
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 74
Automatic vehicle wash 231
AUTO program, automatic climate control 145
AUTO program, intensity 146
Auto Start/Stop function 66
Auto washing 231
AUX-IN port, position in vehicle 154
Average fuel consumption 89
Average speed 89
Axle loads, weights 239

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 51
Band-aids, see First-aid kit 225
Battery replacement, vehicle battery 223
Battery, vehicle 223
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 227
Belts, safety belts 52
Beverage holder, cup holder 159
Blocking, power window 47
Bonus range, GREEN Mode 175
Bottle holder, see Cup holder 159
Brake assistant 120
Brake discs, break-in 164
Brake pads, break-in 164
Braking, information 165
Breakdown assistance 225
Break-in 164
Brightness of Control Display 92
Bug light 217
Bulb replacement 216
Bulb replacement, front 217
Bulb replacement, rear 219
Bulb replacement, side 222
Bulbs and lights 216
Button, Start/Stop 64
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 225

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 8

Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 112
Camera-based cruise control 124
Camera lenses, care 234
Camera, rearview camera 135
Can holder, see Cup holder 159
Car battery 223
Care, displays 234
Care, vehicle 232
Care, washing the vehicle 231
Cargo area 155
Cargo area, adapting size 160
Cargo area, enlarging 156
Cargo area lid 40
Cargo area, loading 169
Cargo area, storage compartments 160
Cargo cover 155
Cargo, stowing and securing 169
Cargo straps 169
Carpet, care 234
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system 165
CBS Condition Based Service 213
Center armrest 159
Center console 16
Central instrument cluster, LED ring 92
Central locking system, unlocking, from inside 38
Central screen, see Control Display 18
Changes, technical, see Own Safety 7
Changing parts 215
Changing wheels 200
Changing wheels/tires 194
Chassis number, see vehicle identification number 10
Check Control 80
Checking the oil level electronically 207
Children, seating position 59
Children, transporting safely 59
Child restraint fixing system 59
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 61
Child restraint fixing systems, mounting 60
Child safety locks 63
Child seat, mounting 60
Child seats 59
Chrome parts, care 233
Chrono package, cockpit 96
Cigarette lighter 153
Cleaning, displays 234
Climate control 142, 144
Clothes hooks 160
Coasting 176
Coasting with engine decoupled, coasting 176
Coasting with idling engine 176
Combination switch, see Turn signals 69
Combi switch, see wiper system 70
Comfort Access 39
Comfort entry 35
Compartments in the doors 159
Compass 151
Compressor 196
Condensation on windows 146
Condensation under the vehicle 166
Condition Based Service CBS 213
Configuring driving program 123
Confirmation signal 44
Control Display 18
Control Display, settings 91
Controller 19
Control systems, driving stability 120
Convenient opening 35
Coolant 211
Cooling function 143, 145
Cooling, maximum 145
Cooling system 211
Cornering light 100
Corrosion on brake discs 166
Cosmetic mirror 153
Courtesy lamps during unlocking 35
Courtesy lamps with the vehicle locked 35
Cruise control 129
Cruise control, active 124
Cruise control with distance control, see camera-based cruise control 124
Cruise control without distance control, see cruise control 129
Cruising range 84
Cup holder 159
Current fuel consumption 85

D

Damage, tires 194
Damping control, dynamic 122
Data, technical 238, 242
Date 92
Date display 84
Daytime running lights 100
Defrosting, see defrosting the windows 144
Defrosting, see Windows, defrosting 146
Defrosting the windows 144
Dehumidifying, air 143, 145
Deleting personal data 24
Deletion of personal data 24
Destination distance 89
Digital clock 84

Digital compass 151
Dimensions 238
Dimmable exterior mirrors 57
Dimmable interior mirror 58
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 69
Display, electronic, instrument cluster 80
Display, engine temperature 89
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 101
Displays 79
Displays, care of 234
Disposal, coolant 212
Disposal, vehicle battery 223
Distance control, see PDC 131
Distance to destination 89
Divided screen view, split screen 23
Drive mode, GREEN Mode 173
Drive-off assistant 123
Drive-off assistant, see DSC 120
Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety 112
Driving Dynamics Control, see MINI Driving Modes switch 122
Driving Excitement, SPORT 90
Driving instructions, break-in 164
Driving modes 122
Driving notes, general 165
Driving on racetracks 167
Driving stability control systems 120
Driving style analysis 177
Driving tip, GREEN tip 175
Driving tips 165
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 120
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 121
Dynamic Damping Control 122
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 120
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 121

E

Electronic displays, instrument cluster 80
Electronic oil measurement 207
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC 120
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 183
Emergency service, see Roadside Assistance 225
Emergency wheel, compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 203
Energy Control 85
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 66
Engine, automatic switch-off 66
Engine compartment 205
Engine compartment, working in 205
Engine coolant 211
Engine idling when driving, coasting 176
Engine oil 207
Engine oil, adding 208
Engine oil additives 209
Engine oil change 209
Engine oil filler neck 208
Engine oil types, alternative 209
Engine oil types, suitable 209
Engine start, jump-starting 225
Engine start, see Starting the engine 65
Engine stop 66
Engine temperature, display 89
Entering a vehicle wash 231
Equipment, interior 149
Error displays, see Check Control 80
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 120
Exchanging wheels/tires 194
Exhaust system 165
Exiting a vehicle wash 231
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 57
Exterior mirrors 56
Exterior mirrors, Automatic Curb Monitor 57
External start 225
External temperature display 84
External temperature warning 84
Eyes for securing cargo 169

F

Failure message, see Check Control 80
False alarm, see Unintentional alarm 45
Fan, see Air flow 143, 146
Favorites buttons, onboard monitor 24
Filler neck for engine oil 208
Fine wood, care 233
First-aid kit 225
Flat tire, changing wheels 200
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 110
Flat tire, repairing 196
Flat tire, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 106
Flat tire, warning lamp 108, 111
Flooding 165
Floor carpet, care 234
Floor mats, care 234
Fogged up windows 144

Fold-away position, windshield wipers 72
Folding back rear seat backrests 156
Foot brake 165
Front airbags 103
Front-end collision warning with City Braking function 113
Front fog lights 101
Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 105
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator lamp 106
FTM Flat Tire Monitor 110
Fuel 184
Fuel cap 182
Fuel consumption, see Average fuel consumption 89
Fuel filler flap 182
Fuel gauge 84
Fuel quality 184
Fuel recommendation 184
Fuel, tank capacity 242
Functions and controls in the center console 16
Functions and controls in the cockpit 14
Fuse 224

G

Garage door opener, see Universal Integrated Remote Control 149
Gasoline 184
Gear change, Steptronic transmission 75
Gear shift indicator 86
General driving notes 165
Glare shield 153
Glass sunroof, initializing the system 49
Glass sunroof, see Panoramic glass sunroof 48
Glove compartment 158
GREEN bonus range 175
GREEN Mode 173
GREEN Mode driving style analysis 177
GREEN Mode indicator 173
GREEN - program, driving dynamics 122
GREEN tip, driving tip 175
Gross vehicle weight, approved 239
Ground clearance 166

H

Halogen headlights 217
Handbrake, see parking brake 68
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 150
Hazard warning flashers 225
Head airbag 103
Headlamp control, automatic 99
Headlight courtesy delay feature 99
Headlight flasher 70
Headlight glass 216
Headlights, care 232
Head restraints 50
Head restraints, front 54
Head restraints, rear 55
Head-up Display 93
Head-Up Display, Shift point indicator 95
Head-up Display, sport displays 95
Head-up Display, standard view 94
Heavy cargo, stowing cargo 169
High-beam Assistant 100
High beams 70
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 100
Hills 166
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 123
Holder for beverages 159
Homepage 6
Hood 205
Horn 14
Hot exhaust system 165
HUD Head-up Display 93
Hydroplaning 165

I

Ice warning, see External temperature warning 84
Icy roads, see External temperature warning 84
Identification marks, tires 192
Identification number, see vehicle identification number 10
Ignition off 64
Ignition on 64
Illuminated ring, central instrument cluster 92
Indication of a flat tire 108, 111
Indicator lamp, see Check Control 80
Individual air distribution 143, 146
Individual settings, see Personal Profile 41
Inflation pressure, tires 186
Inflation pressure warning, tires 110
Info display, refer to On-Board computer 88
Information 6
Initialize, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 107
Initializing, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 111
Instrument cluster 79
Instrument cluster, electronic displays 80
Instrument lighting 101

Integrated key 37
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 29
Intelligent Safety 112
Intended use 7
Intensity, AUTO program 146
Interior equipment 149
Interior lights 102
Interior lights during unlocking 35
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 35
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 58
Interior mirror, manually dimmable 58
Interior motion sensor 45
Interior rearview mirror, compass 151
Internet site 6
Interval display, service requirements 85
Interval mode 71
In the vicinity of the roof-liner 17

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 201
Joystick, Steptronic transmission 75
Jump-starting 225

K

Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 39
Key Memory, see Personal Profile 41
Key, see Integrated key 37
Key, see Remote control 34
Kickdown, Steptronic transmission 74
Knee airbag 104

L

Label on recommended tires 195
Lamp replacement 216
Lamp replacement, front 217
Lamp replacement, rear 219
Lamp replacement, side 222
Language on Control Display 92
Lashing eyes 169
LATCH child restraint system 61
Launch Control 77
Leather, care 233
LED bug light 217
LED headlights 217
LED ring, central instrument cluster 92
LEDs, light-emitting diodes 216
Letters and numbers, entering 25
Light 98
Light-alloy wheels, care 233
Light-emitting diodes, LEDs 216
Lighter 153
Lighting 98
Lights and bulbs 216
Light switch 98
Load 169
Loading 168
Locking, automatic 44
Locking, from inside 38
Locking, settings 43
Locks, doors, and windows 63
Low beams 98
Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant 100
Lower back support, mechanical 51
Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack 170
Lumbar support, mechanical 51

M

Maintenance 213
Maintenance requirements 213
Maintenance, service requirements 85
Maintenance system, MINI 213
Make-up mirror 153
Malfunction displays, see Check Control 80
Manual air distribution 143, 146
Manual air flow 143, 146
Manual mode, transmission 75
Manual operation, exterior mirrors 57
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 183
Manual operation, Park Distance Control PDC 133
Manual operation, rearview camera 135
Manual transmission 74
Manufacturer of the MINI 7
Marking, run-flat tires 196
Maximum cooling 145
Maximum speed, display 86
Maximum speed, winter tires 195
Measurement, units of 92
Mechanical key 37
Medical kit 225
Menu in instrument cluster 88
Menus, refer to onboard monitor operating concept 20
Messages, see Check Control 80
Microfilter 144, 147
MID - program, driving dynamics 122
MINI Connected, see Integrated Owner's Manual
MINI driving modes 122

MINI logo projection during unlocking 35
MINI maintenance system 213
MINIMALISM Analyser 177
MINIMALISM info 176
MINI Motorer's Guide app 6
Minimum tread, tires 193
Mirrors 56
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 165
Mobility System 196
Mode, GREEN Mode 173
Modifications, technical, see Own Safety 7
Moisture in headlight 216
Monitor, see Control Display 18
Mounting of child restraint systems 60
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 14
Multimedia, see Integrated Owner's Manual

N

Navigation, see Integrated Owner's Manual
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints 54
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints 55
Neutral cleaner, see Wheel cleaner 233
New wheels and tires 194

O

OBD Onboard Diagnostics 214
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 136
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade 185
Odometer 84
Office, see Integrated Owner's Manual
Oil 207
Oil, adding 208
Oil additives 209
Oil change 209
Oil change interval, service requirements 85
Oil filler neck 208
Oil types, alternative 209
Oil types, suitable 209
Old batteries, disposal 223
On-board computer 88
On-board computer, refer to On-board computer 88
Onboard Diagnostics OBD 214
Onboard monitor 18
Onboard monitor operating concept 18
Onboard vehicle tool kit 215
Opening and closing 34
Opening, from inside 38
Operating menus, onboard monitor 18
Optional equipment 7
Outside air, see Automatic recirculated-air control 146
Own safety 7

P

Paint, vehicle 232
Panoramic glass sunroof 48
Parallel parking assistant 137
Park Distance Control PDC 131
Parked-car ventilation 147
Parked vehicle, condensation 166
Parking aid, see PDC 131
Parking assistant 137
Parking brake 68
Parking lights 98
Parts and accessories 8
Passenger's side mirror, tilting 57
Pathway lines, rearview camera 136
PDC Park Distance Control 131
Performance Control 121
Personal Profile 41
Person warning with City light braking function 116
Phone, see Integrated Owner's Manual
Pinch protection system, glass sunroof 49
Pinch protection system, windows 46
Plastic, care 234
Post Crash — iBrake 119
Power failure 223
Power windows 45
Prescribed engine oil types 209
Pressure, tire air pressure 186
Pressure warning, tires 110
Profile, see Personal Profile 41
Protective function, glass sunroof 49
Protective function, windows 46
Push-and-turn switch, see Controller 19

R

Racetrack operation 167
Radiator fluid 211
Radio-operated remote control, opening/closing 34
Radio ready state 64
Radio, see Integrated Owner's Manual
Rain sensor 71
Ratchet straps 169
Rear fog lights 101
Rear lights 219

Rear luggage rack 170
Rearview camera 134
Rearview mirror 56
Rear window defroster 144, 147
Recirculated-air filter 147
Recirculated-air mode 143, 146
Recommended fuel grade 185
Recommended tire brands 195
Refueling 182
Remaining range 84
Remote control, blocking 36
Remote control, malfunction 37
Remote control, opening/closing 34
Remote control, replacing the battery 36
Remote control, universal 149
Replacement fuse 224
Replacing parts 215
Replacing the battery, remote control 36
Replacing wheels/tires 194
Reporting safety malfunctions 10
RES CNCL button, see camera-based cruise control 124
RES CNCL button, see Cruise control 129
Reserve warning, see Range 84
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 107
Retreaded tires 195
Roadside parking lights 99
RON recommended fuel grade 185
Roofliner 17
Roof load capacity 239
Roof-mounted luggage rack 170
RSC Run Flat System Component, see Run-flat tires 196
Rubber components, care 233
Run-flat tires 196

S

Safe braking 165
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 53
Safety belts 52
Safety belts, care 234
Safety switch, windows 47
Safety systems, airbags 103
Saving fuel 172
Screen, see Control Display 18
Screwdriver 215
Sealant 196
Seat belts, see Safety belts 52
Seat heating, front 52
Seating position for children 59
Seats 50
Securing cargo 169
Selection list in instrument cluster 88
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission 75
Sensors, care 234
Service and warranty 8
Service requirements, Condition Based Service CBS 213
Service requirements, display 85
Service, Roadside Assistance 225
SET button, see camera-based cruise control 124
SET button, see Cruise control 129
Settings, locking/unlocking 43
Settings, mirrors 56
Settings on Control Display 91
Shift gate rotary switch 122
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 76
Shift point indicator, Head-Up Display 95
Side airbag 103
Signaling, horn 14
Signals when unlocking 44
Sitting safely 50
Size 238
Slide/tilt glass roof 48
Snow chains 199
Socket 153
Socket, OBD Onboard Diagnostics 214
Spare fuse 224
Spare tire, see Emergency wheel 203
Speed, average 89
Speed limit detection, computer 90
Speed Limit Info 86
Speed limits, display 86
Speed warning 91
Split screen 23
Sport displays 90
Sport displays, Head-up Display 95
Sport instruments, cockpit 96
SPORT program, driving dynamics 123
Sport program, transmission 75
Stability control systems 120
Standard equipment 7
Standard view, Head-up Display 94
Start/stop, automatic function 66
Start/Stop button 64
Starting the engine 65
Status control display, tires 107
Status information, onboard monitor 23
Status of Owner's Manual 7
Steering wheel, adjusting 58

Steptronic Sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission 74
Steptronic transmission 74
Stopping the engine 66
Storage compartments 158
Storage, tires 195
Storing the vehicle 234
Stowing and securing cargo 169
Suitable engine oil types 209
Summer tires, tread 193
Sun visor 153
Supplementary text messages 83
Switch for driving dynamics 122
Switch-on times, parked-car ventilation 147
Switch, see Cockpit 14
Symbols 6
Symbols in the status field 23

T

Tachometer 84
Tailgate 40
Tailgate via remote control 35
Tail lamps 219
Technical changes, see Own Safety 7
Technical data 238, 242
Temperature, air conditioner 143
Temperature, automatic climate control 145
Temperature display for external temperature 84
Temperature, engine 89
Terminal, starting aid 226
Text messages, supplementary 83
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 44
Thigh support 51
Tilt alarm sensor 45
Tilting, passenger's side mirror 57
Time 91
Time of arrival 89
Tire damage 194
Tire identification marks 192
Tire inflation pressure 186
Tire inflation pressure monitor, refer to FTM 110
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 106
Tire repair kit, see Mobility System 196
Tires, changing 194
Tire sealant, see Mobility System 196
Tires, everything on wheels and tires 186
Tires, run-flat tires 196
Tire tread 193
Tone, see Integrated Owner's Manual
Tools 215
Total vehicle weight 239
Touchpad 21
Towing 227
Tow-starting 227
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 106
Traction control 121
TRACTION drive mode, driving dynamics 121
Transmission lock, releasing manually 76
Transmission, manual transmission 74
Transmission, see Steptronic transmission 74
Transporting children safely 59
Tread, tires 193
Triple turn signal activation 69
Trip odometer 84
Trip onboard computer 90
Trip recorder, see Trip odometer 84
Turning circle lines, rearview camera 136
Turn signal, front 217
Turn signal, side 222
Turn signals, operation 69
Turn signals, rear, bulb replacement 219

U

Unintentional alarm 45
Units of measurement 92
Universal remote control 149
Unlocking, settings 43
Updates made after the editorial deadline 7
Upholstery care 233
USB interface, position in vehicle 154
USB port, see USB interface 154
Use, intended 7

V

Vanity mirror 153
Vehicle battery 223
Vehicle battery, replacing 223
Vehicle, break-in 164
Vehicle care 232
Vehicle care products 232
Vehicle features and options 7
Vehicle identification number 10
Vehicle jack 201
Vehicle paint 232
Vehicle storage 234
Vehicle wash 231
Vehicle, washing 231
Ventilation 147
Ventilation, see Parked-car ventilation 147

VIN, see vehicle identification number 10
Voice activation system 26

W

Warning and indicator lamps, see Check Control 80
Warning displays, see Check Control 80
Warning messages, see Check Control 80
Warning triangle 225
Warranty 8
Washer fluid 73
Washer nozzles, windshield 72
Washing the vehicle 231
Water on roads 165
Weights 239
Welcome lights 99
Welcome lights during unlocking 35
Wheel cleaner 233
Wheels, changing 194
Wheels, everything on wheels and tires 186
Wheels, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 110
Wheels, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 106
Window defroster, rear 144, 147
Windows, powered 45
Windshield cleaning system 70
Windshield defroster 144, 146
Windshield washer fluid 73
Windshield washer nozzles 72
Windshield wipers, fold-away position 72
Windshield wipers, see wiper system 70
Winter storage, care 234
Winter tires, suitable tires 195
Winter tires, tread 193
Wiper blades, replacing 215
Wiper fluid 73
Wiper system 70
Wood, care 233
Word match concept, navigation 25
Wrench 215

01 40 2 972 313 ue

DRIVE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 972 313 - VI/16